



Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

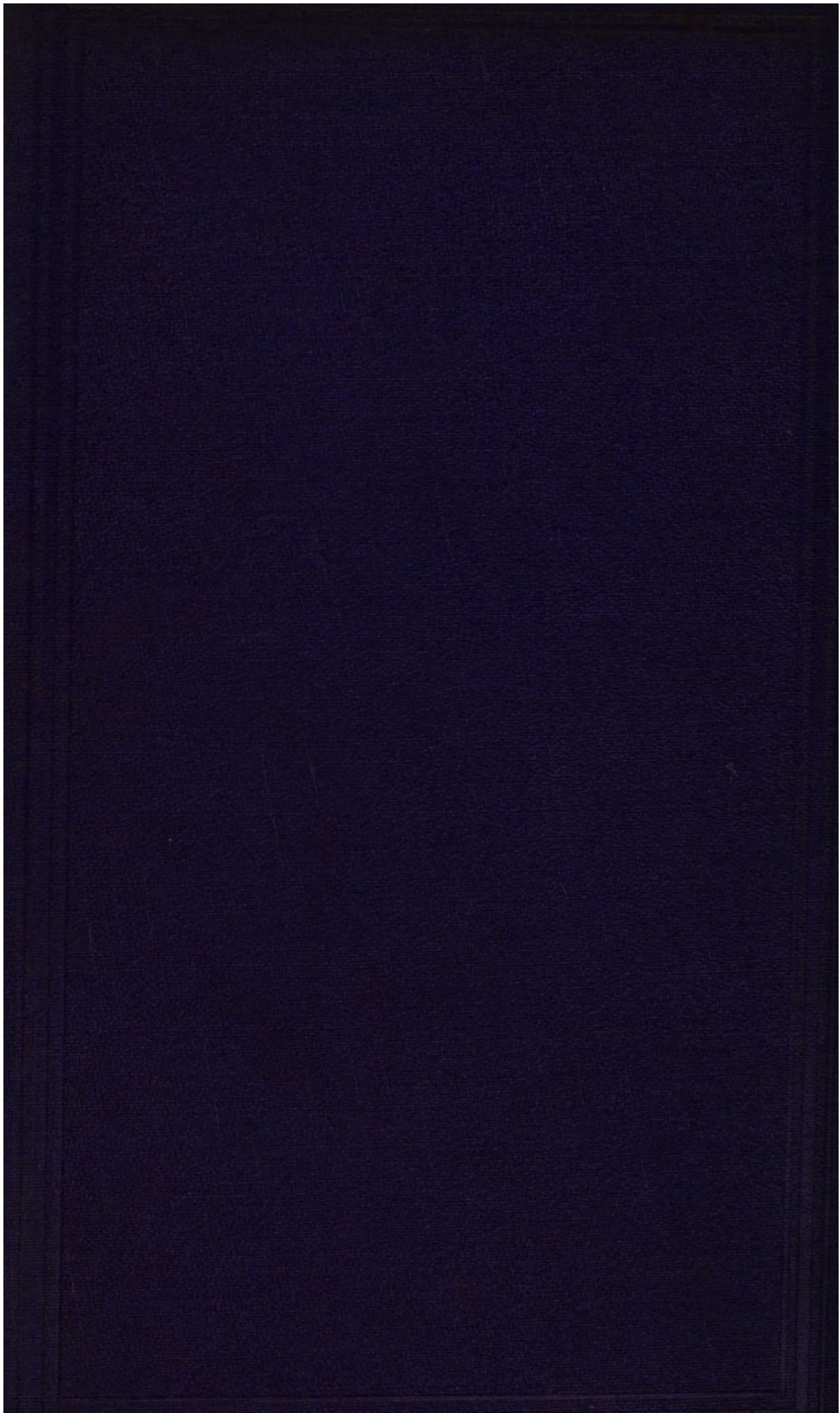
This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>



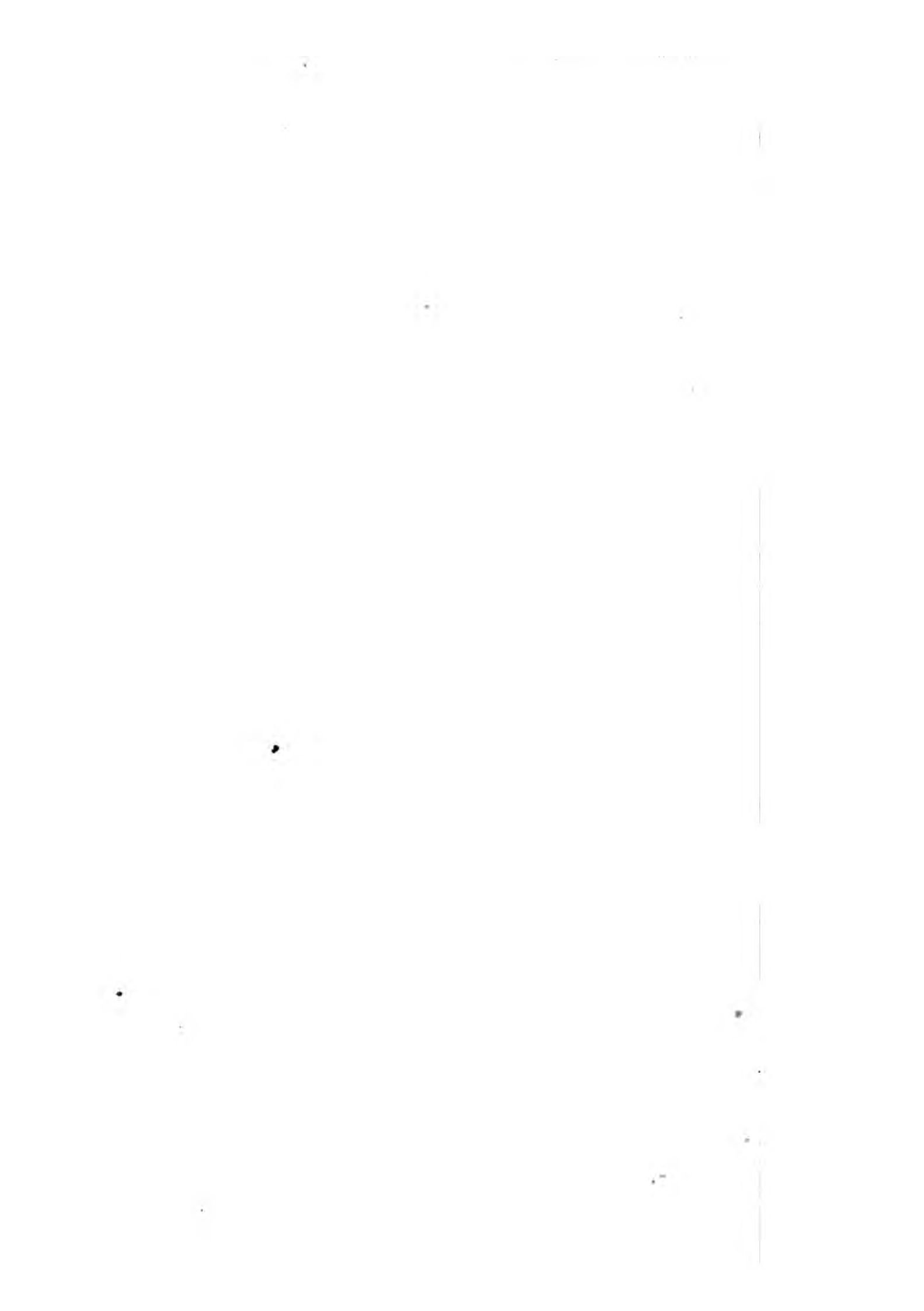
This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.





600084336U





MODERN PRACTICAL
FRENCH GRAMMAR;

CONTAINING

THE ESSENTIALS OF PRONUNCIATION, ACCIDENCE, SYNTAX ;
WITH COPIOUS EXERCISES FOR READING, CONVERSATION,
TRANSLATION, PARSING, Etc., AND PRACTICAL
INSTRUCTIONS ON EPISTOLARY
CORRESPONDENCE.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE STUDENTS.

BY

M. MICHEL, B. A.

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS ;
FRENCH LECTURER TO THE CHURCH OF SCOTLAND TRAINING COLLEGE,
EDINBURGH, ETC.



EDINBURGH :
THOMAS LAURIE, COCKBURN STREET.

LONDON : SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.

303. g 29.

EDINBURGH : T CONSTABLE,
PRINTER TO THE QUEEN, AND TO THE UNIVERSITY

P R E F A C E.

NOTWITHSTANDING the large number of French Grammars already existing, there is still generally felt a want of one that would combine THEORY and PRACTICE in better-balanced proportions ; contain everything necessary and useful to lead to a clear and comprehensive knowledge of the French language, but, at the same time, be free from those lengthy explanations and superfluous details that confuse the pupil and check his progress ; and, above all, one that would render the acquiring of the language more attractive to the pupil, and the imparting of it less trying, less burdensome, and more interesting to the teacher.

In the present work we have endeavoured to satisfy each of these conditions. Our plan is as follows :—

The ESSENTIALS have been condensed and simplified as much as is consistent with lucidity and precision, each rule being illustrated by clear and carefully selected examples.

In accordance with the only rational system in the learning of a living language, that of IMITATION, as adopted by all eminent teachers and grammarians, we have given a double set of EXERCISES ; the one *French*, intended to be used for reading, parsing, and translation into English, the other *English*, for translation into French. Moreover (and this is a novel and important feature of the work, to which we would call special attention), an additional exercise for CONVERSATION has been introduced in the shape of a QUESTIONNAIRE or set of questions, relating to the phrases of the foregoing French exercise.¹ This will form a graduated, methodical, and interesting series of conversational lessons. Simple and easy at first, the questions and answers become by degrees more and more complicated, and, by being brought into contact with all parts of speech, will assume every possible shape, thus containing all the elements of colloquial language. As a foundation for general conversation, this new exercise will prove of great value to every class of students.

The EXERCISES, both French and English, are of reasonable length, and composed of carefully chosen and sensible phrases, intended,

¹ The key to these exercises is given at the end of the book to help the pupil in the preparation, and for *re*-translation. See the Plan of Instruction, p. xi.

not merely to strike the ear of the pupil, but also to speak to his mind and awaken his interest. For, what advantage can possibly be derived from exercises wholly composed of such sentences as these? — *Le livre de mon cousin est plus utile que celui de ma cousine*; or, *Avez-vous vu le cheval de mon oncle? Non, mais j'ai vu celui de votre tante.* It must require no ordinary amount of exertion on the part of the teacher and good-will on that of the pupil, to keep up for any length of time interest in a lesson having for its subject such trivial topics. The invariable result is to weary, dishearten, and disgust, not only the ordinary class of students, but even, and we should say *a fortiori*, the most intelligent and eager of them.

The IRREGULAR VERBS have been arranged on an improved plan, and their conjugation given in full.

The SYNTAX, founded on the recent decisions of the French Academy and the purest writers of the present day, has been much condensed and simplified; it contains the essence of all that is required for a thorough and intelligent acquaintance with the mechanism of the French Language, without entering into those minute cases that can be safely taught only by practice and the reading of French authors; nor into those subtleties that belong only to the province of the grammarian or of the philologist.¹

An important addition has been made at the end of the book, consisting of a series of MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES, for translation from English into French, with foot-notes. These are well graduated in difficulty, and intended as a finishing course for the pupil who has fairly mastered all the rules of grammar and can read with fluency an easy French writer.

The book closes with a few practical pages on *letter-writing* in French.²

We have given a PLAN OF INSTRUCTION at the beginning (see page xi.)

M. MICHEL.

EDINBURGH, *July* 1867.

¹ It may be a matter of surprise to those accustomed to see in the hands of young pupils such ponderous grammars as are unfortunately too commonly used in this country, to learn that these volumes contain many more details, and enter into many more particulars, than any of the class-books studied in France throughout the whole curriculum of a commercial or classical education.

² The Key to the Miscellaneous Exercises obtainable by teachers and self-students. Price 1s.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PLAN OF INSTRUCTION,	xi

INTRODUCTION.

The Alphabet,	1
Vowels,	1
Diphthongs,	2
Nasal Sounds,	2
Consonants,	3
Accents,	4
Apostrophe,	4
Cedilla,	4
Diæresis,	4
Hyphen,	5
Union of Words,	5
Punctuation,	5
Exercise on Pronunciation,	6
Method for Learning a great number of French Words,	6

P A R T I.

ACCIDENCE.

Parts of Speech,	8
----------------------------	---

CHAPTER I.—THE ARTICLE.

Definite Article,	8
Indefinite Article,	9
Genitive and Ablative Cases,	10
Dative Case,	12
Partitive Article,	13

CHAPTER II.—THE SUBSTANTIVE.

Gender,	14
Number,	15
Formation of the Plural,	15

CHAPTER III.—THE ADJECTIVE.

Qualificative Adjectives,	16
Formation of the Feminine,	16

	PAGE
Place of Adjectives,	19
Degrees of Comparison,	20
Numeral Adjectives,	22
Cardinal Numbers,	22
Ordinal Numbers,	23
Fractional, Proportional, and Collective Numbers,	24
Observations on the Numeral Adjectives,	25
Time,	25
Demonstrative Adjectives,	26
Possessive Adjectives,	27
Indefinite Adjectives,	28

CHAPTER IV.—THE PRONOUN.

Personal Pronouns,	29
Observations on Personal Pronouns,	29
Pronouns of the First Person,	30
Pronouns of the Second Person,	30
Pronouns of the Third Person,	31
Of the Pronouns <i>en, y, and le,</i>	32
Possessive Pronouns,	33
Demonstrative Pronouns,	34
Relative Pronouns,	35
Indefinite Pronouns,	38

CHAPTER V.—VERBS.

Moods,	39
Tenses,	39
Numbers and Persons,	40
Conjugation,	40
Auxiliary Verbs,	40
Conjugation of <i>avoir</i> , to have,	40
Idiomatic phrases used with <i>avoir</i> ,	45
Conjugation of <i>être</i> , to be,	46
Idiomatic phrases used with <i>être</i> ,	49
Use of <i>avoir</i> and <i>être</i> as Auxiliaries,	51

REGULAR VERBS.

Synoptical Table of the Primitive Tenses of the four Elementary Conjugations,	52
First Conjugation in <i>er</i> (preliminary observations),	53
Conjugation of <i>parler</i> , to speak,	53
Observations on the Verbs of the First Conjugation ending in <i>cer, ger, eler, eter, yer, etc.</i> ,	56
Second Conjugation in <i>ir</i> ,	60
Conjugation of <i>finir</i> , to finish,	60
Observations on some Verbs of the Second Conjugation,	62
Third Conjugation in <i>oir</i> ,	64
Conjugation of <i>recevoir</i> , to receive,	64
Fourth Conjugation in <i>re</i> ,	68
Conjugation of <i>vendre</i> , to sell,	68
Idiomatic Tenses of Verbs with <i>venir, aller, and devoir</i> ,	72

CONTENTS.

vii

	PAGE
Conjugation of a Verb Negatively (Model),	75
Negations used with a Verb,	77
Conjugation of Verbs Interrogatively,	80
Model of an Interrogative Conjugation,	81
Do. with <i>est-ce-que</i> ,	82
Conjugation, Negatively and Interrogatively (Model),	83
How to form Answers in French,	85
Differences between the French and English construction of Answers,	85
Passive Verbs,	87
Neuter Verbs,	88
Reflective Verbs,	89
Do. conjugated Negatively,	92
Do. conjugated Interrogatively,	93
Do. conjugated Negatively and Interrogatively,	94
Unipersonal Verbs,	97
Conjugation of <i>pleuvoir</i> , to rain,	97
Do. <i>neiger</i> , to snow,	98
Do. <i>y avoir</i> , there to be,	99
Do. <i>falloir</i> , to be necessary,	100
<i>Faire</i> (to be), in speaking of the weather,	101
Idiomatic uses of Unipersonal Verbs,	102
Paradigm to show the Similarity of Verbs in their Final Syllables,	104
Formation of Tenses,	104

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation,	105
<i>Aller</i> , to go,	105
<i>S'en aller</i> , to go away,	108
<i>Envoyer</i> , to send,	109
Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation,	110
<i>Acquérir</i> , to acquire, etc.,	110
<i>Assaillir</i> , to assault, etc.,	111
<i>Bouillir</i> , to boil,	112
<i>Courir</i> , to run, etc.,	112
<i>Cueillir</i> , to gather, etc.,	113
<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep, etc.,	114
<i>Fuir</i> , to fly away, etc.,	115
<i>Mourir</i> , to die,	115
<i>Ouvrir</i> , to open,	116
<i>Partir</i> , to depart, etc.,	117
<i>Sentir</i> , to feel, to smell, etc.,	117
<i>Servir</i> , to serve, etc.,	118
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out, etc.,	118
<i>Tenir</i> , to hold, etc.,	119
<i>Venir</i> , to come, etc.,	120
<i>Vêtir</i> , to clothe, etc.,	121
Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation,	122
<i>Asseoir</i> , to set ; and <i>s'asseoir</i> , to sit down,	122
<i>Mouvoir</i> , to move, etc.,	123
<i>Pouvoir</i> , to provide,	124
<i>Pouvoir</i> , to be able,	125
<i>Savoir</i> , to know,	126
<i>Valoir</i> , to be worth,	127
<i>Voir</i> , to see,	128
<i>Vouloir</i> , to will,	129

	PAGE
Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation,	131
<i>Absoudre</i> , to absolve,	131
<i>Battre</i> , to beat, etc.,	132
<i>Boire</i> , to drink, etc.,	132
<i>Conclure</i> , to conclude, etc.,	133
<i>Conduire</i> , to conduct, etc.,	133
<i>Confire</i> , to preserve, to pickle, etc.,	134
<i>Connaître</i> , to know, etc.,	134
<i>Coudre</i> , to sew, etc.,	135
<i>Craindre</i> , to fear, etc.,	135
<i>Croire</i> , to believe, etc.,	135
<i>Croître</i> , to grow, etc.,	136
<i>Dire</i> , to say, etc.,	136
<i>Ecrire</i> , to write, etc.,	137
<i>Faire</i> , to do, to make, etc.,	137
<i>Lire</i> , to read,	138
<i>Mettre</i> , to put, etc.,	139
<i>Moudre</i> , to grind, etc.,	139
<i>Naître</i> , to be born, etc.,	140
<i>Pâître</i> , to graze, etc.,	140
<i>Plaire</i> , to please, etc.,	140
<i>Prendre</i> , to take, etc.,	141
<i>Résoudre</i> , to resolve, etc.,	141
<i>Rire</i> , to laugh, etc.,	142
<i>Suivre</i> , to follow, etc.,	142
<i>Taire</i> , to conceal, etc.,	143
<i>Traire</i> , to milk, etc.,	143
<i>Vaincre</i> , to vanquish, etc.,	144
<i>Vivre</i> , to live, etc.,	145

CHAPTER VI.—THE PARTICIPLE.

Participle, Present and Past,	146
---	-----

INVARIABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER VII.—THE ADVERB.

Place of the Adverb,	147
Different Classes of Adverbs,	147
Formation of Adverbs from Adjectives,	149
List of Adverbial Phrases,	151

CHAPTER VIII.—THE PREPOSITION.

What is the Preposition?	153
Prepositions most in use,	154
Prepositive Phrases,	155

CHAPTER IX.—THE CONJUNCTION.

What is the Conjunction?	156
Government of Conjunctions in French,	156

CHAPTER X.—THE INTERJECTION.

	PAGE
What is the Interjection?	158
Principal Interjections,	158
Expressions used by way of Interjections,	159
MODEL OF PARSING,	160

PART II.

SYNTAX.

Syntax of the ARTICLE,	161
Use of the Article,	161
Suppression of the Article,	162
Syntax of the SUBSTANTIVE,	163
Collective Nouns,	164
Number of Proper Names,	165
Plural of Compound Substantives,	165
Syntax of the ADJECTIVE,	166
Agreement of Adjectives,	166
Place of Adjectives,	167
Government of Adjectives,	167
Syntax of the PRONOUN,	169
Place of Personal Pronouns,	169
Of the Pronouns <i>soi, en, y, le,</i>	169
Possessive Pronouns,	170
Demonstrative Pronouns,	170
Relative Pronouns,	171
Indefinite Pronouns,	171
Syntax of VERBS,	173
Agreement of Verbs with the Subject,	173
Government or Object of Verbs,	173
Proper use of the Tenses of Verbs,	174
Imperfect Tense (indic. mood),	174
Preterite Definite,	175
Past Indefinite,	175
Future,	175
Subjunctive,	175
Infinitive,	176
Participle,	176
Syntax of the ADVERB,	178
Place of Adverbs,	178
<i>Non</i> and <i>ne,</i>	178
<i>Pas</i> and <i>point,</i>	178
<i>Plus</i> and <i>davantage,</i>	179
Syntax of the PREPOSITION,	180
Translation of the English Prepositions <i>on, in, by, by en,</i>	180
Different ways of translating <i>to,</i>	180
Do. do. <i>for,</i>	180
Do. do. <i>in,</i>	181
<i>At, at the house of (chez),</i>	181
Syntax of the CONJUNCTION,	183
Conjunction <i>and</i> not expressed in French,	183
Use of <i>que,</i>	183

	PAGE
ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF THE FRENCH EXERCISES,	185

FREE EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO FRENCH,
WITH NOTES.

The Crab and her Mother,	203
A Good Excuse,	203
A Generous Proposal,	203
The Boy and the Nettle,	203
A Lady Fond of Squinting,	204
Not at Home,	204
The Contest of Art,	204
The Crow and the Pitcher,	204
What is Rice,	205
Mildness,	205
The Nut (a Fable),	205
The Two Oxford Students,	206
Coffee,	206
Paris,	207
Rabelais in Difficulty,	207
Dean Swift outwitted,	207
A Dream of Charles the Fifth,	208
Shakespeare,	208
A Quid pro Quo,	209
Sugar,	209
The British Empire,	210
Motion of our Globe,	211
The Doctor's Servant,	211
Robinson Crusoe's Habitation,	212
The Burning of Moscow,	214
Mary Stuart, Queen of Scotland,	216
Execution of Mary Stuart,	217
The Family of Wakefield before the Loss of their Fortune,	218
The Family of Wakefield after the Loss of their Fortune,	221

EPISTOLARY CORRESPONDENCE IN FRENCH.

The Date of Letters,	224
Beginning of Letters,	224
Conclusion of Letters,	225
Direction of Letters,	227

MODELS OF LETTERS TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH,
WITH NOTES.

A Young Lady to her Mamma,	227
A Young Lady to another, inviting her to spend a Day,	228
Reply to the Preceding,	228
A Young Lady in the Country to a Companion in Town,	228
A Young Lady at School to her Cousin,	229
A Young Lady visiting to her Sister,	230
A Young Gentleman visiting to his Sister at Home,	231
A Young Gentleman to a Companion, inviting him to a Party,	231
Reply to the Preceding,	232
A Young Gentleman at School to his Papa,	232

PLAN OF INSTRUCTION.

EVERY enlightened teacher, with reasoning and taste, may easily create for himself a system suited to his own turn of mind, and adapted to the intellects under his care. We do not therefore here intend to prescribe any exclusive method, but merely to indicate what seems to us the most appropriate way of using this work, and to guide the student through his labour.

In the first place, the lesson is given out by the teacher, and explained.

PREPARATION IN THE CLASS.

This preparation is the joint work of master and pupil. The RULES are read, expounded if necessary, and illustrated by EXAMPLES, until the teacher is sure they are understood. The FRENCH EXERCISES are read aloud by the teacher and repeated by the pupil ; this will insure a good pronunciation. It now remains for the pupil to study the lesson on his own account.

THE PUPIL'S WORK OUT OF THE CLASS.

His first care should be to study the RULES until he is familiar with them, and commit to memory everything prescribed by the teacher. The FRENCH EXERCISE comes next. The pupil must learn the meaning of each sentence ; and for this purpose he will find assistance in the ENGLISH TRANSLATION given at the end of the book ; then read it in French, pronouncing every word for himself, and aloud if possible ; he must next take notice of the words connected with the rules of the lesson. The QUESTIONNAIRE must be prepared in the same way. The pupil may now, if required, *re-translate* the *English translation* and *questions* into French ; and, lastly, take the French QUESTIONNAIRE and exercise himself in forming from memory the proper answer to each question, after which

he will find it easy to reply to the same questions asked *vivâ voce* during the class-hour. The ENGLISH EXERCISE with interlinear French should always be written, as a test that the rules have been understood.

HEARING OF THE LESSON.

The RULES, EXAMPLES, etc., are repeated. The FRENCH EXERCISE is then translated, read, and parsed. The ENGLISH TRANSLATION may be *re*-translated also into French at sight.¹ Lastly, the QUESTIONS may be asked, which the pupil will find no difficulty in answering, as the reading of the question generally contains in itself the terms required in the reply.

The *English exercise* written in French should be corrected, read over in French, and, if the teacher thinks it proper, given once more to be written for the following lesson.

FREE EXERCISES

ON ALL THE RULES OF GRAMMAR.

TRANSLATION FROM ENGLISH INTO FRENCH.

In these exercises we have given, in notes, the translation of those passages only which the pupil could not be expected to translate properly, because of their idiomatic turn ; but it will be found useful, and almost indispensable, that the teacher should give previously all the explanations and help which the pupils may require, so as to add to the interest of their study and the rapidity of their progress.

¹ In a large class it is advisable to make the pupils close their books, and to give them the English *vivâ voce*.

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

THE ALPHABET.

1. THE French Alphabet is composed of twenty-five letters (six vowels and nineteen consonants), viz.,

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N,
ah, bé, cé, dé, é, eff, gé,¹ ash, ee, jee,¹ kah, ell, m, n,

O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
o, pé, qu,² err, ess, té, u,² vé, eeks, i-grec, zède.

W occurs only in words borrowed from the English or German language; such as *wagon, Walter Scott, l'île de Wight, Westphalie.*

VOWELS.

2. The vowels (*les voyelles*) are *a, e, i, o, u,* and *y.* They may be either long or short.

EXAMPLES.

<i>a</i>	is long in	<i>pâte,</i>	paste.	...	short in	<i>patte,</i>	paw.
<i>e</i>	„	<i>bêche,</i>	spade.	...	„	<i>brèche,</i>	breach.
<i>i</i>	„	<i>épître,</i>	epistle.	...	„	<i>petite,</i>	small.
<i>o</i>	„	<i>apôtre,</i>	apostle.	...	„	<i>mode,</i>	fashion.
<i>u</i>	„	<i>flûte,</i>	flute.	...	„	<i>hutte,</i>	hut.

y is sounded like *i* after a consonant; as, *mystère,* pronounce *mistère*; but it is sounded like double *i* after a vowel; as, *royal,* pronounce *roi-ial*; *paysan,* pronounce *pai-isan.*

¹ *G* and *J* have the same sound as *s* in the English word *pleasure.*

² The French *u* has no corresponding sound in the English language; it is much the same as in the Scotch word *gude*—this sound is produced by placing the lips in a circular shape, as if for whistling.

DIPHTHONGS.

3. The combination of vowels one with another forms the compound vowels and diphthongs, the principal of which are—

<i>ai</i> ,	as in Calais, maire.
<i>au</i> ,	„ Pau, chaud.
<i>ei</i> ,	„ Seine, reine.
<i>ia</i> ,	„ fiacre, piano.
<i>eu</i> ,	„ jeudi, feu.
<i>oê, oe</i> ,	„ poêle, moelle.
<i>oi</i> ,	„ toi, minois.
<i>ou</i> ,	„ Boulogne, chou.

NASAL SOUNDS.

4. The combination of the vowels with *n* and *m* form the nasal sounds; they are—

		Nearest English sounds.
<i>am, an</i>	jambe, plan, fanfan,	} <i>haunt</i> .
<i>em, en</i>	décembre, souvent, ¹	
<i>im, in</i>	} robin, impie, nymphé, feinte, pain, chien, rien, Amiens,	} <i>strength</i> .
<i>ym, yn</i>		
<i>ain, ein</i>		
<i>ien</i>		
<i>om, on</i>	ballon, ombrage,	<i>wrong</i> .
<i>oin</i>	loin, point,	
<i>un, um</i>	brun, humble,	} <i>hung</i> .
<i>eun</i>	à-jeun,	

¹ The termination *ent* is not sounded in the third person plural of verbs; as, *ils chantent*, *ils partirent*, *ils diffèrent*, *ils négligent*, although it is to be sounded in words with the same spelling, but not verbs, such as *négligent*, *différent*.

CONSONANTS.

5. Peculiarities in the pronunciation of consonants :

c is sounded like *g* in *second*, *seconder*, *secondement*.

d at the end of a word is pronounced like *t* when the next word begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

f is not sounded in the plural of *bœuf*, *œuf*, and *nerf*; thus, *bœufs* (*bœus*), *œufs* (*œus*), *nerfs* (*ners*); nor in *cerf*, *clef*, *chef-d'œuvre*, *bœuf-gras*.

gn has sometimes a liquid sound, as in *Bourgogne*, *agneau*; it is sounded hard in *inexpugnable*, *diagnostique*, etc.

h is either mute, as in *l'homme*, *l'harmonie*; or aspirated, as in *le héros*, *le hameau*.

l is silent in *gentil*, *fil*s, etc.

l after an *i* has a liquid sound in *soleil*, *billard*, *feuille*, etc.; but not in *ville*, *illustre*.

p is not sounded before *t* or *s*, as in *baptême*, *temps*.

r (final) is mute in the present infinitive of the first conjugation; as *aimer*, *chanter*, and in *jardinier*, *boulangier*, *volontiers*, etc.

s is sounded like *z* between two vowels, as in *maison*, *visible*. It is sounded in the word *tous* when after its noun, or alone; thus, pronounce the *s* in *les hommes sont tous mortels*; do not pronounce it in *tous les hommes*, etc.

t has two sounds, its simple sound, as in *ton*, *tambour*; and the sound of *c*, as in *nation*, *Vénitien*, *démocratie*.

th is always pronounced like *t*. Ex., *thème*, *pathétique*.

w is pronounced like single *v* in wagon (*vagon*), Westphalie (*Vestphalie*); as *ou* in whig (*ouig*), whisky (*ouisky*); as *s* in Law (*Lass*).

x has the five following sounds:—

ks as in *maxime*, *extase*.

gs „ *examen*, *exemple*.

ss „ *Bruxelles*, *Auxerre*.

k as in *excès*, *exciter*.

z „ *deuxième*, *dixième*.

z is not generally sounded, unless before a vowel or *h* mute; as, *venez ici*; *allez chez eux*.

ACCENTS.

6. Accents are generally used to modify the sound of the vowels over which they are placed; they sometimes merely serve to distinguish from each other words spelt alike, but of a different signification.

7. There are three accents: the acute (´), *l'accent aigu*; the grave (`), *l'accent grave*; and the circumflex (^), *l'accent circonflexe*.

8. The *acute* is placed over the vowel *é* to give it an acute or slender sound; as in *été, vérité*.

9. The *grave* is placed on *è* to give it a broad sound; as in *père, très*, and also on *à* (to), *là* (there), *où* (where), and *dès* (from), to distinguish these words from *a* (has), *la* (the), *ou* (or), and *des* (of the).

10. The *circumflex* is placed over vowels to give them a broad and long sound. It generally denotes the suppression of a letter once used, as in *apôtre* (from the Latin *apostolus*), which was formerly written *apostre*; *âge*, formerly *aage* (*ætas*), *âme* (*anima*), *nous chantâmes* (*cantavimus*).

APOSTROPHE.

11. The apostrophe ('), *l'apostrophe*, denotes the suppression of the vowels *a*, *e*, or *i* at the end of a word, before another word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, in order to avoid the hiatus. Ex., *l'enfant, l'homme, l'amitié, s'il, j'ai*; for *le enfant, le homme, la amitié, si il, je ai*.

CEDILLA.

12. The cedilla (ç), *la cédille*, is placed under the letter *ç* before *a*, *o*, and *u*, to give it a soft sound. Ex., *garçon, reçu, façade, balançoire*; which are pronounced *garson, resu, fasade, balansoire*.

DIÆRESIS.

13. The diæresis (¨), *le tréma*, is put over the vowels *e*, *i*, *u*, to separate them in pronunciation from the preceding

vowel. Ex., *Noël, Saül, Héloïse*; which are pronounced *No-el, Sa-ul, Hélo-ise*.

HYPHEN.

14. The hyphen (-), *le trait d'union* or *tiret*, is used to connect words together. Ex., *arc-boutant, allons-nous-en, dix-huit*.

UNION OF WORDS.

15. The final consonant of a word is generally pronounced with the initial vowel or silent *h* of the next, when the two words are connected together by the sense.

16. In this union of words *s* and *x* take the sound of *z*, *d* of *t*, *g* of *k*, and *f* of *v*; as—

		Pronounce.
les enfants	<i>the children</i>	lè-zenfants
vous avez	<i>you have</i>	vou-zavez
dix ans	<i>ten years</i>	di-zans
grand homme	<i>great man</i>	gran-tomme
sang illustre	<i>illustrious blood</i>	san-killustre
neuf heures	<i>nine hours</i>	neu-veures
mon ami	<i>my friend</i>	mo-nami.

PUNCTUATION.

17. The signs of punctuation are—

- (.) point, *full stop or period.*
- (,) virgule, *comma.*
- (:) deux points, *colon.*
- (;) point et virgule, *semicolon.*
- (?) point d'interrogation, *sign of interrogation.*
- (!) point d'exclamation, *sign of exclamation.*
- (...) points de suspension, *points of suspension.*
-) parenthèse, *parenthesis.*
- (" ") guillemets, *inverted commas, quotation.*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE ON PRONUNCIATION.

18. VOWELS, ACCENTS, AND SIGNS.

<i>a</i>, . . .	. . .	ma, ta, sa, papa, ananas, ratifia, rat, chat.
<i>e, eu</i>, . . .	. . .	le, me, ne, que, heureux, bleu, jeune, beurre.
<i>é</i>, . . .	. . .	né, bébé, répété, café.
<i>è, ê, ai, ei</i>, . . .	. . .	très, succès, fête, têtù, maison, reine.
<i>i, y</i>, . . .	. . .	ni, ami, imiter, mystère, gîte, physique.
<i>o, ô, au</i>, . . .	. . .	notre, école, rose, le nôtre, pôle, eau, baume.
<i>u, eu</i>, . . .	. . .	nu, vertu, tumulte, murmure, j'eus, nous eûmes.
<i>ou</i>, . . .	. . .	coucou, loup, trou, souris, boudoir, mousquetaire.
<i>oi, oua</i>, . . .	. . .	moi, soie, poisson, toison, bourgeois, ouate.
<i>an, en</i>, . . .	. . .	an, ensuite.
<i>am, em</i>, . . .	. . .	ambroisie, d'emblée, empereur.
<i>in, ain, yn</i>, . . .	. . .	vin, pain, ceinture, faim, Benjamin, Edimbourg, Dublin.
<i>on</i>, . . .	. . .	mon, bonbon, Londres, allons, Toulon, melon.
<i>un, eun</i>, . . .	. . .	brun, humble, parfum, lundi, Melun, à-jeun.
<i>y (ii)</i>, . . .	. . .	citoyen (<i>citoy-ièn</i>), royal (<i>roi-ial</i>), paysan (<i>pai-isan</i>).
<i>apostrophe (')</i>, . . .	. . .	l'arbre, l'enfant, je t'aime, jusqu'à la fin.
<i>cedilla (ç)</i>, . . .	. . .	garçon, façade, avançons, Français, sans façon.
<i>dieresis (¨)</i>, . . .	. . .	naïf, Saül, baïonnette, Moïse, ciguë.
<i>hyphen (-)</i>, . . .	. . .	Ver-à-soie, parlez-vous, vis-a-vis, tête-à-tête.

A METHOD FOR LEARNING A GREAT NUMBER OF FRENCH WORDS.

19. Most words are alike in both languages when having the following terminations :—

<i>al</i>, . . .	. . .	métal, général, royal, libéral, radical, etc.
<i>ace, ice</i>, . . .	. . .	race, préface, grimace, justice, service, etc.
<i>ade, ude</i>, . . .	. . .	brigade, cavalcade, multitude, prélude, etc.
<i>acle, icle</i>, . . .	. . .	spectacle, oracle, tabernacle, article, etc.
<i>ance, ence</i>, . . .	. . .	distance, chance, éloquence, silence, etc.
<i>ant, ent</i>, . . .	. . .	constant, éléphant, accident, compliment, etc.
<i>ble</i>, . . .	. . .	adorable, visible, noble, Bible, double, etc.

<i>ge</i> , . . .	âge, collège, refuge, vestige, orange, etc.
<i>ile, ule</i> , . . .	agile, docile, ridicule, mule, formule, etc.
<i>ine</i> , . . .	machine, héroïne, carabine, doctrine, etc.
<i>ion</i> , . . .	légion, opinion, transaction, éducation, etc.

20. Many French words differ from the English only in their termination :—

English termination.	French term.
<i>ary</i> ,	aire, as <i>military</i> , militaire.
<i>ory</i> ,	oire, „ <i>victory</i> , victoire.
<i>or</i> ,	eur, „ <i>tutor</i> , tuteur.
<i>our</i> ,	eur, „ <i>favour</i> , faveur.
<i>ous</i> ,	eux, „ <i>generous</i> , généreux.
<i>ic</i> ,	ique, „ <i>music</i> , musique.
<i>id</i> ,	ide, „ <i>rapid</i> , rapide.
<i>ive</i> ,	if, „ <i>active</i> , actif.
<i>ian</i> ,	ien, „ <i>Indian</i> , Indien.
<i>ist</i> ,	iste, „ <i>artist</i> , artiste.
<i>cy</i> ,	ce, „ <i>constancy</i> , constance.
<i>ty</i> (after a vowel), . . .	té, „ <i>beauty</i> , beauté.
<i>y</i> , other than the preceding,	ie, „ <i>modesty</i> , modestie.

21. Most proper names, of women and goddesses, ending in *a*, become French by changing *a* into *e*, as, *Bertha*, Berthe ; *Julia*, Julie ; *Minerva*, Minerve.

22. Most of the English verbs ending in *ate*, *fy*, *ish*, *ise*, *yse*, *use*, and *ute*, become French by changing their termination as follows :—

<i>ate</i>	into	<i>er</i> ,	as,	to interrogate,	<i>interroger</i> .
<i>fy</i>	„	<i>fier</i> ,	„	to defy,	<i>défier</i> .
<i>ish</i> ,	„	<i>ir</i> ,	„	to finish,	<i>finir</i> .
<i>ise</i> ,	}	add	<i>r</i> ,	to realise,	<i>réaliser</i> .
<i>yse</i> ,				to analyse,	<i>analyser</i> .
<i>use</i> ,				to abuse,	<i>abuser</i> .
<i>ute</i> ,				to dispute,	<i>disputer</i> .

PART I.

ACCIDENCE.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

23. There are in French ten parts of speech, viz.,—the *Article*, the *Substantive*, the *Adjective*, the *Pronoun*, the *Verb*, the *Participle*, the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*.

24. The first six are *variable*, and consequently, subject to the rule of agreement with the word to which they relate.

The last four are *invariable*.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE ARTICLE.

25. The *Article* is a word placed before substantives to specify the extent of their signification, and to point out their gender, number, and case.

26. There are in French three articles, the *Definite*, the *Indefinite*, and the *Partitive*.

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

27. The *Definite* article in its simple form, *le*, *la*, *les* (the) answers to the nominative and accusative cases; it is used as follows:—

The	{	<i>Le</i> , masc. sing.,	<i>Le père,</i>	<i>le lion,</i>
			the father.	the —
		<i>La</i> , fem. sing.,	<i>La mère,</i>	<i>la rose,</i>
			the mother.	the —
		<i>L'</i> , instead of <i>le</i> or <i>la</i> , (before a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.)	<i>L'enfant,</i>	<i>l'histoire,</i>
			the child.	the 20
		<i>Les</i> , plural of both genders,	<i>Les hommes,</i>	<i>les femmes,</i>
			the men.	the women.

EXERCISE I.

Translate, read, and parse—

(*Vide* the English translation after the Syntax).

1. Le père et la mère sont dans la maison. 2. L'enfant est dans le jardin.
3. Les élèves sont dans la classe. 4. Le maître instruit les élèves. 5. Le
roi est dans le palais. 6. La reine est dans le parc. 7. Le soleil nous
éclaire pendant le jour, et la lune nous éclaire pendant la nuit. 8. L'oiseau
est dans le nid. 9. Le rossignol chante dans le feuillage.

Note.—When the pupil has mastered the foregoing exercise, he will have to answer, book shut, to the following questions, which may be asked either by the teacher, or if in a class, by one of the pupils.

QUESTIONNAIRE

On the phrases of the foregoing exercise.

1. *Qui est dans la maison?* 2. *Qui est dans le jardin?* 3. *Où sont les élèves?* 4. *Qui instruit les élèves?* 5. *Qui est dans le palais?* 6. *Qui est dans le parc?* 7. *Qu'est-ce qui nous éclaire pendant le jour?* 8. *Qu'est-ce qui nous éclaire pendant la nuit?* 9. *Que fait le rossignol dans le feuillage?*

EXERCISE II.

The gentleman is in the library. The lady is in the drawing-room.
monsieur est dans bibliothèque (f). dame salon (m).
The young-ladies are in the garden. The dog is in the street. The
demoiselles sont jardin (m). chien rue (f).
cat is under the table. The parrot is in the cage. The uncle, the
chat sous — (f). perroquet — (f). oncle,
aunt, the nephew, the niece, the cousins (m), the cousins (f).
tante, neveu, nièce, — cousines.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

28. The *Indefinite* article *un, une* (a), and *des*, is used as follows:—

a or an	{	<i>Un</i> , m. sing., . . .	<i>Un roi,</i>	<i>un berger,</i>
			a king.	a shepherd.
		<i>Une</i> , fem. sing., . . .	<i>Une reine,</i>	<i>une bergère,</i>
		a queen.	a shepherdess.	
		<i>Des</i> , pl. m. & f., . . .	<i>Des soldats,</i>	<i>des maisons,</i>
		(Not expressed in English.)	soldiers.	houses.

EXERCISE III.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Un bon livre est un bon ami. 2. Le lis est une belle fleur. 3. Le chien est un animal fidèle. 4. Les rats et les souris sont des animaux malfaisants. 5. Les soldats portent des armes. 6. Edimbourg est une belle ville. 7. Le Rhône est un fleuve. 8. L'instruction est un trésor. 9. La charité est une vertu. 10. La paresse est un vice.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *Qu'est un bon livre?* 2. *Le lis est-il une belle fleur?* 3. *Le chien est-il un animal fidèle?* 4. *Quelle sorte d'animaux sont les rats et les souris?* 5. *Que portent les soldats?* 6. *Edimbourg est-il une belle ville?* 7. *Qu'est-ce que le Rhône?* 8. *L'instruction est-elle un trésor?* 9. *Qu'est-ce que la charité?* 10. *Qu'est-ce que la paresse?*

EXERCISE IV.

I have a brother and a sister. The gardener has a son and a daughter. The dog and the cat are domestic animals. The lion and the bear are wild beasts. The eagle is a bird of prey. Paris is a fine city. Switzerland is a republic. Health is a treasure. Industry and perseverance are virtues.

J'ai frère sœur. jardinier a fils
frère sœur. 2 1
filles. chien chat domestiques animaux. —
ours sauvages animaux. 2 1
aigle oiseau de proie. —
belle ville (f). La Suisse 20 (f)(art.) santé (f) trésor (m)
(art.) 20 (f) (art.) — (f) vertus.

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE.

29. The definite and indefinite articles, joined to the preposition *De* (of or from), are used as follows:—

of or from the	{	<i>Du</i> , masc. sing., . . . <i>Du prince</i> ,
		(contr. of <i>de le</i>) . . . of the —
		<i>De la</i> , fem. sing., . . . <i>De la princesse</i> ,
		. . . of the princess.
		<i>De l'</i> , m. & f. sing., . . . <i>De l'homme, de l'esprit</i> ,
		(before a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.) . . . of man. of mind.
		<i>Des</i> , pl. of both gen., . . . <i>Des soldats</i> ,
		(contr. of <i>de les</i>) . . . of the soldiers.

of or from a,—*D'un* (m), *d'une* (f), *d'un prince*, *d'une princesse*.

30. The English possessive case, expressed by 's, does not exist in French, and is rendered by the ordinary genitive form; thus, *the king's palace*, must be translated as if it were *the palace of the king, le palais du roi*.

31. The substance of which something is composed, is also rendered by the genitive; thus, *a gold watch*, must be translated as if it were, *a watch of gold, une montre d'or*; *a silver spoon, une cueiller d'argent*; *a steel pen, une plume d'acier*.

EXERCISE V.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Dieu est le créateur du monde. 2. La vie de l'homme est courte. 3. Les fleurs des champs répandent un parfum délicieux. 4. La capitale de la France est Paris. 5. La capitale de l'Angleterre est Londres. 6. Un vase d'or est plus précieux qu'un vase d'argent. 7. Le vin est le jus fermenté du raisin. 8. Le cidre est le jus fermenté de la pomme. 9. La France est séparée de l'Espagne par les Pyrénées. 10. Le Volga, le Danube, et le Rhin sont les plus grands fleuves de l'Europe. 11. Le meilleur café vient de Moka en Arabie.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *Qui est le créateur du monde?* 2. *La vie de l'homme est-elle courte?* 3. *Qu'est-ce qui répand un parfum délicieux?* 4. *Quelle est la capitale de la France?* 5. *Quelle est la capitale de l'Angleterre?* 6. *Un vase d'or est-il plus précieux qu'un vase d'argent?* 7. *Qu'est-ce que le vin?* 8. *Qu'est-ce que le cidre?* 9. *Par quelles montagnes la France est-elle séparée de l'Espagne?* 10. *Quels sont les plus grands fleuves de l'Europe?* 11. *D'où vient le meilleur café?*

EXERCISE VI.

The current of the Rhone is rapid. The Duke's horse is white.
cours (m) *Rhône* (m). 20. *Duc cheval blanc*.
 Florence is the capital of Italy. Emily has bought a silk dress
 — *capitale* (f) (art.) 20. 20 *acheté soie robe* (f)
 and a straw hat. Robert has received a newspaper from Paris.
paille chapeau (m). — *reçu journal* (m)
 The little boy comes from school. The little girl comes from the
petit garçon vient (art.) *école* (f) *petite fille*
 village. Are you speaking of London? No, we are speaking of Paris.
 — (m). *parlez-vous Londres? Non, nous parlons*

DATIVE CASE.

32. The definite and indefinite articles joined to the preposition *à* (*to* or *at*), are used as follows:—

<i>to the</i>	{	<i>au</i> , masc. sing., . . . <i>au Duc</i> , <i>au cheval</i> , (contr. of <i>à le</i>) . . . to the duke. to the horse.
		<i>à la</i> , fem. sing., . . . <i>à la fille</i> , <i>à la souris</i> , to the girl. to the mouse.
		<i>à l'</i> , sing., m. & f., . . . <i>à l'enfant</i> , <i>à l'école</i> , (before a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.) . . . to the child. to the school.
		<i>aux</i> , pl., m. & f., . . . <i>aux soldats</i> , <i>aux enfants</i> , (contr. of <i>à les</i>) . . . to the soldiers. to the children.

to a ... *à un* (m); *à une* (f).

à des (not expressed in English).

EXERCISE VII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Dieu a donné à chacun une arme ; au lion la force, au taureau des cornes, à l'abeille un aiguillon, à l'homme l'intelligence. 2. L'ambition sacrifie le présent à l'avenir, le plaisir sacrifie l'avenir au présent. 3. Les soldats obéissent aux ordres du général. 4. Le professeur donnera un thème et une version aux élèves.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. Dieu a-t-il donné une arme à chacun ? Quelle arme Dieu a-t-il donné au lion ? et au taureau ? et à l'abeille ? et à l'homme ? 2. Qu'est-ce qui sacrifie le présent à l'avenir ? Qu'est-ce qui sacrifie l'avenir au présent ? 3. A qui les soldats obéissent-ils ? 4. A qui le professeur donnera-t-il un thème et une version.

EXERCISE VIII.

I spoke to the master. The king has written a letter to the
J'ai parlé maître. roi écrit lettre (f)
 ministers. Religion gives to virtue hope, to vice
ministres. (art.) — (f) donne (art.) vertu (f) (art.) espérance (f) (art.) — (m)
 alarm, and to repentance consolation. In summer I prefer
des alarmes (art.) repentir (m) des — (pl.) En été je préfère
 the country to the town, but in winter I prefer the town to the
campagne (f) ville (f) mais hiver
 country.

PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

33. The *Partitive* article in French is expressed by the same words as the genitive definite.

34. *Du* (m); *de la* (f); *de l'*; *des* (pl.)—meaning *some*.

<i>Donnez moi</i>	}	<i>du pain</i> (m. s.), <i>de la viande</i> (f. s.), <i>de l'eau</i> , . . . (before a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.) <i>des cerises</i> (pl. m. & f.,)	} give me	{ some bread, { some meat, { some water, { some cherries.
-------------------	---	---	-----------	--

35. *Du, de la, des*, meaning *any*. *Avez-vous du pain? de la viande*, etc.? Have you any bread? any meat, etc.?

36. *Du, de la, des*, not expressed in English. *J'ai du pain, de la viande*, etc. I have bread, meat, etc.

37. OBS.—If an adjective occurs *before* the substantive, the proposition *de* alone is used. Ex., I have good bread, good meat, etc.: *J'ai de bon pain, de bonne viande*, etc.; and also after a negative—*Je n'ai pas de frère; Je n'ai pas de sœur; Je n'ai pas d'amis*.

EXERCISE IX.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Chez le boulanger on trouve du pain, des gâteaux et de la farine.
2. Chez le libraire on vend des livres, du papier, de l'encre et des plumes.
3. Dans le jardin il y a des fleurs, dans la forêt des arbres, dans la prairie de l'herbe.
4. En France on boit à déjeuner du chocolat ou du café au lait.
5. La Bourgogne produit d'excellent vin, la Normandie d'excellent cidre.
6. En Allemagne on fait de bonne bière.
7. Les Ecossais fabriquent de bonne flanelle et de superbes tartans.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. Que trouve-t-on chez le boulanger?
2. Que vend-on chez le libraire?
3. Qu'y a-t-il dans le jardin? et dans la forêt? et dans la prairie?
4. Que boit-on en France à déjeuner?
5. Que produit la Bourgogne? et la Normandie?
6. Que fait-on en Allemagne?
7. Que fabriquent les Ecossais?

EXERCISE X.

At the grocer's they sell sugar, salt, pepper, vinegar,
Chez épiciier on vend sucre(m) sel(m) poivre(m) vinaigre(m)
 oil, mustard, preserves, etc. To obtain success (we
huile (f) moutarde (f) confitures (f) Pour obtenir succès (m) il
 must have) industry and perseverance. In an army there must be
faut 20 (f) (f). Dans armée(f) il doit y avoir
 order and discipline. England possesses fine horses. Spain
ordre (m) — (f). L'Angleterre possède beaux chevaux. L'Espagne
 produces fine oranges. Sicily possesses beautiful marbles.
produit belles — (f). La Sicile possède beaux marbres(m).

CHAPTER II.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

38. A *Substantive* or *Noun* is a word which expresses the name of a person, or of an object (material, spiritual, or ideal); such as, *homme*, man; *livre*, book; *espérance*, hope; *Dieu*, God.

39. There are two sorts of nouns, *Common* and *Proper*. The noun *Common* belongs to all persons or things of the same kind; as, *enfant*, child; *arbre*, tree; the noun *Proper* applies to one particular person or thing; as, *Paris*, *les Alpes*, *Charles*, *Colbert*.

GENDER.

40. Gender marks the distinction of sex. In French there are but two genders; the masculine, belonging to males; and the feminine, belonging to females. As there is no neuter, inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine.¹

Masculine.

L'homme, the man.

Le lion, the lion.

Le soleil, the sun.

Feminine.

La femme, the woman.

La lionne, the lioness.

La lune, the moon.

¹ Practice and Dictionaries are undoubtedly the best, indeed the only practical means to learn the genders of inanimate objects.

NUMBER.

41. There are two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

(The following rules apply to nouns, adjectives, and participles.)

42. GENERAL RULE.—Add *s* to the singular; as, *le bon roi*, the good king; *les bons rois*, the good kings.

43. EXCEPTION FIRST.—Words ending in *s*, *x*, or *z* do not change in the plural; as, *un fils vertueux*, a virtuous son; *des fils vertueux*, virtuous sons.

44. EXCEPTION SECOND.—Words ending in *au*, *eu*, in the singular, take an *x* in the plural instead of an *s*; as, *le beau château*, the beautiful castle; *les beaux châteaux*, the beautiful castles; however, *bleu* and *feu* (late), follow the general rule. Add also *x* to the following words in *ou*: *bijou*, jewel; *caillou*, pebble; *chou*, cabbage; *genou*, knee; *hibou*, owl.

45. EXCEPTION THIRD.—Words ending in *ail* or *al*, change that termination into *aux* for the plural. Ex., *cardinal* (s.), *cardinaux* (pl.); *travail*, work (s.), *travaux* (pl.); *corail* (s.), *coraux* (pl.); however, *bal*, *naval*, *carnaval*, *détail*, *portail*, *sérail*, *gouvernail*, and a few others seldom used, follow the general rule.

46. Irregularities:—*Aieul*, *ciel*, and *œil*, have two plurals. *Aieul*, grandfather, *aieuls* (for grandfathers), and *aieux* (for forefathers). *Ciel*, heaven, *cieux* (heavens), and *ciels* (sky of a picture). *Œil*, eye, *yeux* (eyes of the body), *œils* (bull's eyes). *Bétail*, cattle (s.), makes *bestiaux* (pl.) *Ail*, garlic, makes *aulx* (pl.) *Tout*, all, every (s.), *tous* (pl.) *Penny* (English coin), *pence* (pl.).

EXERCISE XI.

Spell or write the plural of the following:—

homme, femme, fruit, noix, souris, tapis, Français, Anglaise,
man woman nut mouse carpet French English (f.)

Chinois,	Turc,	cheval,	agneau,	nuage,	feu,	gaz,	neveu,
<i>Chinese</i>	<i>Turkish</i>	<i>horse</i>	<i>lamb</i>	<i>cloud</i>	<i>fire</i>	—	<i>nephew</i>
feu,	trou,	chou,	crystal,	hibou,	matou,	filou,	travail,
<i>late</i> (deceased)	<i>hole</i>	<i>cabbage</i>	—	<i>owl</i>	<i>tom-cat</i>	<i>sharper</i>	<i>work</i>
royal,	beau,	belle,	grand,	bétail,	gouvernail,	chapeau	bas,
—	<i>beautiful</i>	<i>beautiful</i> (f)	<i>great</i>	<i>cattle</i>	<i>rudder</i>	<i>hat</i>	<i>stocking</i>
acacia,	héros,	ciel,	vertueux,	heureux,	bleu,	poisson,	oiseau,
—	<i>hero</i>	<i>heaven</i>	<i>virtuous</i>	<i>happy</i>	<i>blue</i>	<i>fish</i>	<i>bird</i>
charmante,	gras,	œuf,	œil,	armée,	tout,	final.	
<i>charming</i> (f)	<i>fat</i>	<i>egg</i>	<i>eye</i>	<i>army</i>	<i>all</i>	—	

EXERCISE XII.

Translate, and put the following phrases in the plural :—

1. Une loi juste.
2. Un bois épais.
3. L'étoile brillante.
4. Un ruisseau limpide.
5. Une montagne escarpée.
6. Un négociant anglais.
7. Une aurore boréale.
8. Un décret impérial.
9. Un monument colossal.
10. Un choix heureux.
11. Un cordon bleu.
12. Un fardeau pesant.
13. Un détail superflu.
14. Un travail utile.
15. Un filou audacieux.
16. L'habit noir.
17. Le chapeau pointu.
18. Un sou français.
19. L'œil intelligent.
20. Le cheval fougueux.
21. Le héros magnanime.
22. Un tribunal sévère.
23. L'amiral hollandais.
24. Le cardinal romain.
25. Une idée extraordinaire.
26. Une locomotive aérienne.

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

47. The Adjective is a word added to a substantive (expressed or understood), with which it agrees in gender and number.

48. There are five classes of Adjectives; viz., *Qualificative*, *Numeral*, *Possessive*, *Demonstrative*, and *Indefinite*.

QUALIFICATIVE ADJECTIVES.

FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

Note.—The following rules apply to all words which are susceptible of having a feminine.

49. GENERAL RULE.—The feminine is formed by adding *e* mute to the masculine; as, *petit* (m.), *petit-e* (f.), small; *charmant* (m.), *charmant-e* (f.), charming.

50. Adjectives ending in *e* mute are the same in both genders; as, *un homme aimable; une femme aimable*.

51. Adjectives in *f* change *f* into *ve* for the fem.; as, *un chapeau neuf, une robe neuve*.

52. Adjectives in *x* change *x* into *se* for the fem.; as, *il est heureux, elle est heureuse*.

	Masc.		Fem.
except	{ <i>doux,</i>	. . . . .	<i>douce,</i> sweet, mild.
	{ <i>roux,</i>	. . . . .	<i>rousse,</i> red, fair.
	{ <i>faux,</i>	. . . . .	<i>fausse,</i> false

53. Adjectives ending in *el, eil, en, on, et,* become feminine by doubling the final consonant and adding *e* mute; as, *cruel, cruelle; muet, muette*.

And also the following:—

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
<i>bas,</i>	<i>basse,</i> low.	<i>gentil,</i>	<i>gentille,</i> genteel.
<i>épais,</i>	<i>épaisse,</i> thick.	<i>gras,</i>	<i>grasse,</i> fat.
<i>exprès,</i>	<i>expresse,</i> express.	<i>las,</i>	<i>lasse,</i> tired.
<i>gros,</i>	<i>grosse,</i> big, stout.	<i>sot,</i>	<i>sotte,</i> foolish.
<i>nul,</i>	<i>nulle,</i> null.	<i>paysan,</i>	<i>paysanne,</i> peasant.

But *complet, discret, secret, inquiet,* make in the feminine *complète, discrète,* etc.

54. The adjectives and nouns ending in *er* become feminine by adding an *e* mute, and putting a grave accent on the preceding *e*. Ex., *cher, chère; fier, fière; berger, bergère; cuisinier, cuisinière; dernier, dernière,* etc.

55. Five adjectives have a double masculine, but only one feminine; they are—

	Masc.		Fem.
<i>beau,</i>	or	<i>bel.</i>	<i>belle,</i> beautiful.
<i>fou,</i>	,,	<i>fol.</i>	<i>folle,</i> mad.
<i>mou,</i>	,,	<i>mol.</i>	<i>molle,</i> soft.
<i>nouveau,</i>	,,	<i>nouvel.</i>	<i>nouvelle,</i> new.
<i>vieux,</i>	,,	<i>vieil.</i>	<i>vieille,</i> old.

Note.—The second masculine form, *bel, fol,* etc., is used before a vowel or *h* mute. Ex., *bel enfant; fol espoir.*

56. Adjectives ending in *eur* change *eur* into *euse* for the feminine. Ex., *trompeur, trompeuse*, deceitful, from *tromper*, to deceive; except *enchanteur, enchanteresse*, enchanting; *pêcheur, pécheresse*, sinner; *chasseur, chasseresse*, hunter; *vengeur, vengeresse*, avenger; *baillieur, bailleresse*; *défendeur, défenderesse*; *gouverneur, gouvernante*; *serviteur, servante*.

Except also those ending in *teur*, which make *trice* in the feminine. Ex., *acteur, actrice*; *bienfaiteur, bienfaitrice*; which terminations are derived from the Latin terminations *tor* and *trix*.

57. Irregularities: — *Malin, maligne*; *bénin, bénigne*; *blanc, blanche*; *franc, franche*; *sec, sèche*; *frais, fraîche*; *turc, turque*; *grec, grecque*; *franc, franque*; *public, publique*; *jumeau, jumelle*; *long, longue*; *traître, traîtresse*; *tiers, tierce*; *empereur, impératrice*.

EXERCISE XIII.

ON THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

The pupil will replace the hyphen by the adjective used in the phrase immediately before, and put it in the feminine.

1. Un homme prudent; une femme — 2. Un petit garçon; une — fille. 3. Un ami sincère; une parole — 4. Un langage bref; une voyelle — 5. Un acte honteux; une conduite — 6. Un faux passe-port; une — signature. 7. Un vieux bouquin; un vieil hermite; une — sorcière. 8. Un bon déjeuner; une — action. 9. L'amour paternel; la sévérité — 10. Le bœuf gras; la panse — 11. Un gros rat; une — pomme. 12. Le premier élève; la — ligne. 13. Un esprit fier; une âme — 14. Un nouveau système; le — an (m.); la — année (f.) 15. Un projet flatteur; une pensée — 16. Un site enchanteur; une beauté — 17. Nimrod le chasseur; Diane la — 18. Un esprit supérieur; une femme — 19. Le génie créateur; la puissance — 20. Un cygne blanc; une génisse — 21. L'idiôme grec; la religion — 22. Un auteur favori; une récréation — 23. Le traître Judas; la — Frédégonde. 24. Le tiers-état; une — majeure.

PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

58. The place of qualificative adjectives is generally after the noun, instead of before, as in English, although many (mostly monosyllabic adjectives) are placed before; such as, *beau, vieux, jeune*, etc. In this, however, the only safe guide is practice.

59. Some adjectives have a different meaning, according as they precede or follow the substantive; thus,—

<i>Un grand homme</i>	means	a great man.
<i>Un homme grand</i>	„	a tall man.
<i>Un brave homme</i>	„	an honest man.
<i>Un homme brave</i>	„	a brave man.

EXERCISE XIV.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. La Loire est une grande et belle rivière, qui arrose la partie centrale de la France et se jette dans l'océan Atlantique. 2. Les habitants de la Guinée ont la peau noire et la figure aplatie. 3. La monarchie Française commença sous le roi Pharamond. 4. On divise les arts en arts libéraux et en arts mécaniques. 5. Le Ministre de l'Instruction Publique réside à Paris. 6. Un petit homme peut être aussi un grand homme. 7. La langue Italienne est douce et harmonieuse.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *Qu'est-ce que la Loire? Quelle partie de la France arrose-t-elle? Ou se jette-t-elle?* 2. *Qu'avons nous dit des habitants de la Guinée?* 3. *Sous quel roi commença la monarchie Française?* 4. *Comment divise-t-on les arts?* 5. *Où réside le Ministre de l'Instruction Publique?* 6. *Un petit homme peut-il être un grand homme?* 7. *Quelles qualités la langue Italienne possède-t-elle?*

EXERCISE XV.

Note.—In the following exercise the pupil has to give to the adjectives their proper gender, number, and place.

Roman	history	is	instructive	and	interesting.	I like a
<i>Romain</i>	(art.) 20 (f)		20		<i>intéressant.</i>	<i>J'aime</i>
French	comedy, an	English	tragedy	and an	Italian	opera.
<i>Français</i>	20 (f)	<i>Anglais</i>	20 (f)		<i>Italien</i>	— (m.)

Silent grief, like a still water, generally lies
muet une douleur telle qu' une tranquille eau est en général
 deep. Religion is necessary and natural to man.
profond. (art.) — (f) 20 naturel (art.) homme.
 J. J. Rousseau, endowed with a strong and fiery imagination,
 — — — — — *doué d' une fort ardent — (f)*
 was all his life subject to frequent fits of misanthropy,
tout sa vie (f) sujet (37) — accès (m) 20
 and to all the variations attendant upon it.
 — (f) *qui en résultent.*

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

60. There are three degrees of comparison, the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

61. The Positive is the adjective itself in its simple form ; as, *un enfant sage et obéissant.*

62. The Comparative may be expressed in three different ways :—

1. Equality, as *Je suis aussi grand que vous,*
I am as tall as you.
2. Superiority, „ *Je suis plus grand que vous,*
I am taller than you.
3. Inferiority, „ *Je suis moins grand que vous,*
I am less tall than you.
or, *Je ne suis pas si grand que vous,*
I am not so tall as you.

63. Observe—1. *Si* is used instead of *aussi* when the phrase is negative ; 2. The adverbs expressing comparison, such as *plus, moins, si, aussi,* etc., must be repeated before every adjective.

64. There are two sorts of superlatives—the *Relative* and the *Absolute*. The Superlative *Relative* is formed by putting the article *le, la, les,* or the possessive *mon, ma, mes,* etc., before the comparative ; as, *le plus grand de tous,* the tallest of all ; *mon plus jeune frère,* my youngest brother. The Superlative *Absolute* is formed by prefixing the adverbs *très, fort, bien, extrêmement,* etc., to the adjective ; as, *très grand, bien bon.*

65. Three adjectives are irregular in the formation of their comparative and superlative, viz.,—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Bon</i> , good ;	<i>meilleur</i> , better ;	<i>le meilleur</i> , the best.
<i>Mauvais</i> , bad ;	<i>pire</i> or <i>plus mauvais</i> , worse ;	<i>le pire</i> or <i>le plus mauvais</i> , the worst.
<i>Petit</i> , small ;	<i>moindre</i> or <i>plus petit</i> , smaller ;	<i>le moindre</i> or <i>le plus petit</i> , the smallest.

66. Which must not be confounded with the corresponding adverbs—

<i>Bien</i> , well ;	<i>mieux</i> , better ;	<i>le mieux</i> , best.
<i>Mal</i> , badly ;	<i>pis</i> or <i>plus mal</i> , worse ;	<i>le pis</i> or <i>le plus mal</i> , worst.
<i>Peu</i> , little ;	<i>moins</i> , less ;	<i>le moins</i> , least.

EXERCISE XVI.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Un exemple est meilleur qu'un conseil. 2. Le rossignol chante le mieux de tous les oiseaux. 3. La rose est une belle fleur ; elle est plus belle que la tulipe. 4. La terre est plus grande que la lune, mais beaucoup moins grande que le soleil. 5. Le moindre vent plie le roseau, mais la plus violente tempête ne peut le déraciner. 6. Le tigre est aussi brave mais non pas si généreux que le lion. 7. La Sibérie est un pays très froid.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *Qu'est-ce qui est meilleur qu'un conseil ?* 2. *Quel oiseau chante le mieux ?* 3. *Nommez une belle fleur, plus belle que la tulipe ?* 4. *La terre est-elle plus grande que la lune ? est-elle moins grande que le soleil ?* 5. *Qu'avons nous observé sur le roseau ?* 6. *Qu'avons nous remarqué sur le tigre ?* 7. *Qu'avons nous dit de la Sibérie ?*

EXERCISE XVII.

A slight reproach is sometimes heavier on the mind than
léger reproche (m) *quelquefois pesant sur le cœur* (m)
 the harshest reprimand. The best lessons are those taught by
sévère réprimande (f). *leçons* (f) *celles que nous enseignons*

experience. Mont Blanc is the highest mountain in Europe.
 (art.) — *Le* — — *haut montagne* (f) *de* (art.) —
 The grape is the most wholesome and agreeable of all fruits.
raisin (m) *sain* *agréable* (art.) — (m)
 Idleness is a very dangerous vice. London is the largest and most
 (art.) *Paresse* (f) 20 — (m) *grand*
 populous city in Europe; Paris is the finest.
populeuse ville (f) *de l'*—

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

67. There are two sorts, the Cardinal and the Ordinal.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

68. The Cardinal Numbers denote quantity; they are,—

1, un (m), une (f).	24, vingt-quatre.
2, deux.	25, vingt-cinq.
3, trois.	26, vingt-six.
4, quatre.	27, vingt-sept.
5, cinq.	28, vingt-huit.
6, six.	29, vingt-neuf.
7, sept.	30, trente.
8, huit.	31, trente et un.
9, neuf.	32, trente-deux, etc.
10, dix.	40, quarante.
11, onze.	41, quarante et un.
12, douze.	42, quarante-deux, etc.
13, treize.	50, cinquante.
14, quatorze.	51, cinquante et un.
15, quinze.	52, cinquante-deux, etc.
16, seize.	60, soixante.
17, dix-sept.	61, soixante et un.
18, dix-huit.	62, soixante-deux, etc.
19, dix-neuf.	70, soixante et dix.
20, vingt.	71, soixante-onze.
21, vingt et un.	72, soixante-douze.
22, vingt-deux.	73, soixante-treize.
23, vingt-trois.	74, soixante-quatorze.

75, soixante-quinze.	92, quatre-vingt-douze, etc.
76, soixante-seize.	100, cent.
77, soixante-dix-sept.	101, cent un, etc.
78, soixante-dix-huit.	200, deux cents.
79, soixante-dix-neuf.	300, trois cents, etc.
80, quatre-vingts.	400, quatre cents, etc.
81, quatre-vingt-un.	1,000, mille.
82, quatre-vingt-deux, etc.	100,000, cent mille.
90, quatre-vingt-dix.	1,000,000, un million.
91, quatre-vingt-onze.	2,000,000, deux millions.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

69. The Ordinal Numbers denote order ; they are :—

1 ^{er} premier, . . .	1st.	18 ^e dix-huitième, . .	18th.
2 ^d second	} . 2d.	19 ^e dix-neuvième, . .	19th.
2 ^e deuxième		20 ^e vingtième, . . .	20th.
3 ^e troisième, . . .	3d.	21 ^e vingt et unième, . .	21st.
4 ^e quatrième, . . .	4th.	22 ^e vingt-deuxième, etc.,	22d.
5 ^e cinquième, . . .	5th.	30 ^e trentième, . . .	30th.
6 ^e sixième, . . .	6th.	40 ^e quarantième, . . .	40th.
7 ^e septième, . . .	7th.	50 ^e cinquantième, . . .	50th.
8 ^e huitième, . . .	8th.	60 ^e soixantième, . . .	60th.
9 ^e neuvième, . . .	9th.	70 ^e soixante-dixième, . .	70th.
10 ^e dixième, . . .	10th.	80 ^e quatre-vingtième, . . .	80th.
11 ^e onzième, . . .	11th.	90 ^e quatre-vingt-dixième, . .	90th.
12 ^e douzième, . . .	12th.	100 ^e centième, . . .	100th.
13 ^e treizième, . . .	13th.	101 ^e cent-unième, . . .	101st.
14 ^e quatorzième, . . .	14th.	102 ^e cent-deuxième, . . .	102d.
15 ^e quinzième, . . .	15th.	200 ^e deux-centième, . . .	200th.
16 ^e seizième, . . .	16th.	1000 ^e millièmè, . . .	1000th.
17 ^e dix-septième, . . .	17th.	1,000,000 ^e millionième.	

70. The ordinal numbers become adverbs by the addition of *ement* or *ment* ; as *premièrement*, firstly ; *secondement* or *deuxièmement*, secondly ; *troisièmement*, thirdly, etc.

71. From the cardinal and ordinal numbers are formed

other numerical expressions, called fractional, proportional, and collective numbers.

I.—FRACTIONAL.

<i>demi</i> (m),	} . half.	<i>les deux-tiers</i> , two-thirds.
<i>demie</i> (f),		<i>les trois-quarts</i> , three-fourths.
<i>moitié</i> ,		<i>un cinquième</i> , one-fifth.
<i>le tiers</i> , . . .	the third.	<i>un sixième</i> , . one-sixth.
<i>le quart</i> , . . .	the fourth.	<i>un dixième</i> , etc. one-tenth.

II.—PROPORTIONAL.

<i>le double</i> , . . .	the double.	<i>le quintuple</i> , .	five-fold.
<i>le triple</i> , . . .	the treble.	<i>le décuple</i> , .	ten-fold.
<i>le quadruple</i> , .	four-fold.	<i>le centuple</i> , etc.,	hundred-fold.

III.—COLLECTIVE.

<i>une couple</i> , a couple.	<i>une quarantaine</i> , a coll. of 40.
<i>une dizaine</i> , a collection of 10.	<i>une cinquantaine</i> , „ 50.
<i>une douzaine</i> , a dozen.	<i>une soixantaine</i> , „ 60.
<i>une demi-douzaine</i> , half-a-dozen.	<i>une centaine</i> , „ 100.
<i>une quinzaine</i> , a collection of 15.	<i>un millier</i> , „ 1000.
<i>une vingtaine</i> , „ 20.	<i>des milliers</i> , „ thousands.
<i>une trentaine</i> , „ 30.	

EXERCISE XVII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. L'Académie Française compte 40 membres.
2. L'année se compose de 12 mois; ce sont: Janvier, Février, Mars, Avril, Mai, Juin, Juillet, Août, Septembre, Octobre, Novembre, et Décembre.
3. Une semaine a 7 jours, savoir, Lundi, Mardi, Mercredi, Jeudi, Vendredi, Samedi, et Dimanche.
4. La population de la France est d'environ 40 millions d'âmes; la population des Iles Britanniques de près de 30 millions.
5. Londres contient 3 millions d'habitants et Paris près de 2 millions.
6. Nous avons 5 sens: la vue, l'ouïe, l'odorat, le goût et le toucher.
7. Il y a 7 couleurs primitives: le rouge, l'orange, le jaune, le vert, le bleu, l'indigo, et le violet.
8. En France on compte par francs et par centimes.
9. Un franc équivaut à 10 pence anglais.
10. Le centime est la 100^{me} partie du franc.
11. Un sou vaut 5 centimes.
12. Deux fois 5 font 10.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *De combien de membres l'Académie Française est-elle composée?*
2. *Combien de mois y-a-t-il dans l'année? Nommez-les.*
3. *Combien de jours dans une semaine? Nommez-les.*
4. *Quelle est la population de la France et celle des Iles Britanniques?*
5. *Combien Londres et Paris ont-ils d'habitants?*
6. *Combien de sens avons nous, et quels sont ils?*
7. *Combien y a-t-il de couleurs primitives?*
8. *Comment compte-t-on en France?*
9. *Quelle est la valeur d'un franc en monnaie anglaise?*
10. *Qu'est-ce qu'un centime?*
11. *Combien un sou vaut-il de centimes?*
12. *Combien font deux fois cinq?*

OBSERVATIONS ON THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

71. *Vingt* and *cent* take the mark of the plural when preceded and not followed by another number; thus, write with an *s*, *Deux cents hommes*; but without *s*, *Deux cent dix hommes*.

72. *Mil* (thousand) is used instead of *mille* in dates. Ex., *L'an mil huit cent*.

73. With the days of the month, and in speaking of sovereigns, the cardinal number is used; as, *Le onze Juin*, the eleventh of June; *Henri iv. (quatre)*, Henry the Fourth; except in mentioning the first or sometimes the second when speaking of sovereigns, and the first when of the day of the month; thus, *François 1^{er} (premier)*; *George II. (second or deux)*; *Le premier Mai*, or *de Mai*.

Note.—In speaking of the Emperor Charles v. and of Pope Sixtus v., we say *Charles Quint* and *Sixte Quint*.

74. TIME.

Quelle heure est-il?

Il est midi.

„ *midi et demi.*

„ *une heure.*

„ *une heure et un quart.*

„ *une heure et demie.*

„ *deux heures moins un quart.*

„ *deux heures précises.*

„ *minuit.*

What o'clock is it?

It is twelve (in the day).

„ half-past twelve.

„ one o'clock.

„ a quarter past one.

„ half-past one.

„ a quarter to two.

„ two precisely.

„ twelve (at night).

B

EXERCISE XIX.

That village contains about eight hundred inhabitants. In that
Ce — (m) *contient environ* *habitant.* *Dans ce*
 college there are three hundred and fifty boarders. America
 — (m) *il y a* *pensionnaires.* *L'Amérique* (f)
 was discovered in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-two.
fut découvert * *l'an*
 The French Academy was founded by Cardinal Richelieu under the
 20 (f) *fut fondé par le* — — *sous*
 reign of Louis Thirteenth in the year one thousand six hundred and
règne (m) *de* — *
 thirty-five. Napoleon the first was born at Ajaccio on the fifteenth of August
 — *naquit à* — * *Août*
 in the year one thousand seven hundred and sixty-nine. The Roman
 * *Romain*
 dominion in Gaul lasted more than five hundred years.
domination (f) *dans les Gaules dura plus de*
 The distance from London to Paris is three hundred fifty-six miles.
 — (f) *de* *de* *milles.*
 In the month of January the sun rises at about half-past eight
Au *Janvier* *soleil* (m) *se lève vers les*
 and sets at about four o'clock. The Edinburgh time-gun fires at one
se couche vers les *Le canon d'Edimbourg part à*
 o'clock precisely.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

75. Demonstrative Adjectives are used to point out objects; they must be repeated before every noun in French; they are—

This or that,	{	<i>Ce</i> , masc. sing., . . . as, <i>Ce soldat,</i> <i>ce hameau,</i> this soldier. this hamlet.	
		<i>Cet</i> , masc. sing., . . . „ <i>Cet écolier,</i> <i>cet homme,</i> (before a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.) this scholar. this man.	
		<i>Cette</i> , fem. sing., . . . „ <i>Cette dame,</i> <i>cette fleur,</i> this lady. this flower.	
<i>These</i> or <i>those,</i>	{	<i>Ces</i> , pl. of both genders,	<i>Ces enfants,</i> <i>ces arbres,</i> these children. those trees.

76. *Ci* and *là* (*here* and *there*) are sometimes added to the noun, to point it out more distinctly; as, *Prenez ce livre-ci*, take this book; *Donnez moi ce livre-là*, give me that book.

EXERCISE XX.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Ce village est bien bâti.
2. Ce livre est instructif.
3. Cette gravure me plait.
4. Ces pommes et ces poires sont excellentes.
5. Cette petite fille-ci est laborieuse, mais ce garçon-là est négligent.
6. Cet arbre-ci est très vigoureux, mais ces arbres-là sont presque morts.

EXERCISE XXI.

This horse gallops very well. This house is newly built.
cheval galope très bien. maison (f) est nouvellement bâtie.

Those meadows belong to Mr. B. Take this apple and I
prairie (f) sont à Prenez pomme (f) je

shall take those grapes. This hat does not suit me at all.
prendrai raisin (m). chapeau (m) ne me va pas bien du tout.

Will you have this bonnet or that one? This pen is better than
Prendrez-vous chapeau plume (f)

that. These boys and girls are coming from school.
garçons filles viennent (art.) école.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

77. The Possessive Adjectives are always *joined to a noun*, which they precede, and with which they agree in gender and number; they are—

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Pl. of both genders.
My,	<i>mon,</i>	<i>ma,</i>	<i>mes.</i>
Thy,	<i>ton,</i>	<i>ta,</i>	<i>tes.</i>
His, her, its,	<i>son,</i>	<i>sa,</i>	<i>ses.</i>
Our,	<i>notre,</i>	<i>notre,</i>	<i>nos.</i>
Your,	<i>votre,</i>	<i>votre,</i>	<i>vos.</i>
Their,	<i>leur,</i>	<i>leur,</i>	<i>leurs.</i>

78. The masculine form, *mon, ton, son*, is used before feminine words beginning with a vowel or silent *h*, to avoid the hiatus caused by the meeting of two vowels; as, *mon âme*, my soul; *ton épée*, thy sword; *son admirable conduite*, his admirable conduct.

79. *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle*, make in the plural *Messieurs, Mesdames, Mesdemoiselles*.

80. OBS.—By politeness we say, *Monsieur votre père, Madame votre mère, Mademoiselle votre sœur*, etc.

EXERCISE XXII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Jean, apportez-moi mon chapeau, ma canne et mes gants. 2. Prête-moi ton crayon ou ta plume. 3. Cette personne parle sans cesse de ses consins et de ses cousines. 4. Notre maison est grande, mais notre jardin est petit. 5. Bien des amitiés à Monsieur votre père de ma part. 6. Ernest a reçu une lettre de ses parents. 7. Tachez de gagner son amitié.

EXERCISE XXIII.

My pen is bad. Thy book is torn. Henry has lost
plume (f) mauvais livre (m) déchiré Henri perdu
 his book and his slate. Henrietta has forgotten her copy-book.
ardoise (f) 21 oublié cahier (m)
 Here is our friend Robert. I saw your uncle, your aunt, and your
Voici ami J'ai vu
 cousins. Good pupils do not forget their books nor their pens.
Les élève n'oublent pas ni

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

81. The Indefinite Adjectives denote that the noun to which they refer is taken in a general and indeterminate sense; they are—

aucun, . . any, . . as, *avez-vous aucun souci?* Have you any care?
aucun, . . no, none, . . „ *je n'ai aucun souci.* I have no care.
pas un, . . „ . . „ *je n'ai pas un sou.* I have not a penny.
nul, . . . „ . . „ *nul souci ne le chagrine.* No care troubles him.
autre, . . other, . . „ *autre maître, autre chien.* Other master, other dog.
certain, . . certain, . . „ *certain Maître Renard.* A certain Master Reynard.
chaque, . . each, . . „ *chaque âge a ses plaisirs.* Every age has its pleasures.
maint, . . many a, . . „ *mainte bataille fut livrée.* Many a battle was fought.
quel, . . . what, . . „ *quel temps superbe!* What splendid weather!
quelconque, whatever, „ *un point quelconque étant donné.* Given any (follows the noun.) point whatever.
quelque, . . some, any, „ *ayez quelque pitié pour moi.* Have some pity for me.

quelque...que, whatever, as, *quelque fortune que vous ayez*. Whatever fortune you may have.

tel, . . . such, . . ., *tel rit devant qui pleure derrière*. Such laugh in company who cry when alone.

tout, . . . all, every, . . ., *tout homme est sujet à erreur*. Every man is subject to error.

82. The English indefinite adjectives *many*, *few*, *fewer*, *so many*, etc., are rendered by adverbs in French.—See *Adverbs of Quantity*.

EXERCISE XXIV.

Have you any recollection of that affair? No, I have
souvenir (m) *affaire* (f) *n'en*

no recollection of it. No path of flowers leads to glory. I
 * *chemin* (m) *fleur* *conduit* (art.) 20 (f.)

have been there many a time. What a wonder! Whatever talents
² *y* ¹ *fois* (f) *merveille* (f) — (m)

you may have, do not forget from whom you hold them. Such a
que *ayez* *n'oubliez-pas* *qui* *tenez* *les*

conduct is unworthy of you.
conduite (f) *indigne*

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

83. The Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid repetition.

84. There are five sorts of pronouns; viz., *Personal*, *Possessive*, *Demonstrative*, *Relative*, and *Indefinite*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

85. Personal Pronouns are used to represent persons or personified objects.

PARTICULAR OBSERVATIONS.

86. GENERAL RULE.—Personal pronouns in French are generally placed *before* the verb; as, *Je vous le donne* (literally, *I you it give*), I give it to you.

87. They are placed *after*—1. When there is a preposition

in French before them ; as, *Je parle de vous*, I speak of you. 2. When the verb is in the imperative affirmative, as *parlez lui*, speak to him ; *donnons le lui*, let us give it to him. But if the imperative is used with a negative, the general rule is followed ; as, *ne me parlez pas* (literally, *to me speak not*), do not speak to me. 3. In interrogative sentences the subject of the verb comes after, but the other pronouns precede ; as, *me parlez-vous ?* (literally, *me speak you*), do you speak to me ? *me le donnes-tu ?* (*me it givest thou*), dost thou give it to me ?

88. PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.

SUBJECT,	{	<i>je</i> , . . .	}	I,	as,	<i>je donne</i> , . . .	}	I give.
		<i>moi</i> , . . .				<i>c'est moi</i> , . . .		it is I.
OBJECT,	{	<i>me</i> , . . .	}	me,	„	<i>il me flatte</i> , . . .	}	he flatters me.
				to me,	„	<i>il me parle</i> , . . .		he speaks to me.
		<i>moi</i> , . . .		me,	„	<i>parlez-moi</i> , . . .		speak to me.
						<i>il parle de moi</i> , . . .		he speaks of me.

PLURAL.

OBJECT,	. . .	<i>nous</i> ,	. . .	we,	. . .	as,	<i>nous donnons</i> ,	we give.	
SUBJECT,	. . .	<i>nous</i> ,	. . .	{	us,	. . .	„	<i>il nous voit</i> ,	he sees us.
				{	to us,	. . .	„	<i>donnez-nous</i> .	give us.

EXERCISE XXV.

I speak French. I have given my book to Henry. He sees me.
parle *donné* *livre(m)* *voit*

She speaks to me. Write to me. Believe me. Do it for me. We
parle *Ecrivez* *Croyez* *Faites-le pour*

have sung together. He knows us. The gardener gave us a
chanté ensemble. *Il connaît* *a donné*

basket of fruits.
corbeille (f)

90. PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

SINGULAR.

SUBJECT,	{	<i>tu</i> ,	}	thou,	as	<i>tu es heureux</i> ,	}	thou art happy.
		<i>toi</i> ,				<i>est ce toi</i> ,		. . . is that you.
OBJECT,	{	<i>te</i> ,	}	thee,	„	<i>Dieu te voit</i> ,	}	God sees thee.
				to thee,	„	<i>je te parle</i> ,		. . . I speak to thee.
		<i>toi</i> ,		thee,	„	<i>nous parlons de toi</i> ,		we speak of thee.

PLURAL.

SUBJECT, *vous*, you, as, *vous chantez*, . . you sing.
 OBJECT, *vous*, { you, ,, *je vous connais*, . I know you.
 { to you ,, *il vous parle*, . . he speaks to you.

91. OBS.—It is customary in France to use the singular number in addressing father, mother, brother, sister, and other relatives; likewise, when parents address their children; the same form is also generally adopted by school-fellows among themselves. Ex., *Papa, prête-moi ta canne. Charles, veux-tu me prêter ton canif.* This use of *tu, te, toi*, is designated by the words *tutoiement* (substantive) and *tutoyer* (verb).

EXERCISE XXVI.

Thou hast broken my pen. I give thee this nosegay. I
brisé plume(f) donne bouquet(m)
 love thee. I speak to thee. You love us. We love you. We speak
aime parle aimez aimons parlons
 of you. I bring you a newspaper.
apporte journal (m)

92. PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

SINGULAR.

SUBJECT { *il*, } he, . . . { as *il étudie*, . . he studies.
 { *lui*, } ,, *est-ce lui*, . . is that he.
 { *elle*, she, . . . ,, *elle chante*, . . she sings.
 OBJECT { *le*, him, . . . ,, *je le vois*, . . I see him.
 { *la*, her, . . . ,, *je la vois*, . . I see her.
 { *lui*, to him, to her, ,, *je lui parle*, . . I speak to him.
 { *de lui*, of him, . . . ,, *parlez moi de lui*, speak of him to me.
 { *d'elle*, of her, . . . ,, *parlez moi d'elle*, speak to me of her.

PLURAL.

SUBJECT { *ils (m)*, . . they, as *ils jouent*, . . they play.
 { *eux*, . . . they, ,, *ce sont eux*, . . it is they.
 { *elles (f)*, . . they, ,, *elles jouent*, . . they play.
 OBJECT { *les (m & f)*, them, ,, *je les vois*, . . I see them.
 { *eux (m)*, . . them, ,, *venez avec eux*, come with them.
 { *elles (f)*, . . them, ,, *venez avec elles*, come with them.
 { *leur (m & f)*, to them, ,, *je leur parle*, . I speak to them.

EXERCISE XXVII.

He speaks German ; she sings tastefully. Do you know him ?
parle allemand chante avec goût. Connaissez-vous
 I know her. I write to her. Apply to him. He speaks
connais écris Adressez-vous
 continually of her. They dance. I hear them. I came with
sans cesse dansent. entends suis venu avec
 them. Speak to them.
Parlez

93. Reflective, *se, soi*, himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Il se flatte, he flatters himself. *Chacun pour soi*, each one
 for himself.

OF THE PRONOUNS *en, y*, AND *le*.

94. The pronouns *en, y*, and *le* always precede the verb
 unless it be in the imperative affirmative.

95. *En* is used instead of a word or phrase already ex-
 pressed, such as, *of him, of her, of it, from him*, etc., *some,*
any, etc. ; as—

<i>Cette demoiselle vous plait, vous en parlez souvent.</i>	That young lady pleases you, you often speak of her.
<i>Cette maladie est dangereuse ; on peut en mourir.</i>	This illness is dangerous ; one may die of it.
<i>Avez-vous de la monnaie ? Oui, j'en ai.</i>	Have you got any change ? Yes, I have some.
<i>Voici d'excellentes fraises, en dé- sirez-vous ?</i>	Here are excellent strawberries. Will you have any ?

96. *Y* is used with reference to persons or things already
 mentioned ; it corresponds to the English *to him, to her, to*
it, etc., *in it, in them*, etc., *therein, thereto*, etc. ; as—

<i>Je connais cet homme ; ne vous y fiez pas.</i>	I know that man ; do not trust to him.
<i>Il aime l'étude et s'y livre entière- ment.</i>	He loves study, and devotes him- self entirely to it.
<i>J'ai reçu ces lettres ce matin ; je vais y répondre.</i>	I received these letters this morn- ing ; I am going to answer (to) them.
<i>J'y ai remarqué plusieurs fautes.</i>	I have noticed several mistakes in it.
<i>N'y allez pas.</i>	Do not go (to) there.

97. *Le* (so) is a pronoun of both genders and numbers, which serves to avoid the repetition of an adjective, a substantive used adjectively, and sometimes part of a sentence ; as, *Vous êtes jeune et je ne le suis pas*, you are young, and I am not (so). *Etes vous contentes, mesdemoiselles ? Oui, nous le sommes.* Are you contented, young ladies ? Yes, we are (so).

98. When *le* represents a noun, or an adjective used substantively, it must agree with it in gender and number ; as, *Etes vous la sœur de Monsieur X. ? Oui, je la suis.* Are you Mr. X.'s sister ? Yes, I am. *Etes vous les filles de Madame N. ? Oui, nous les sommes.* Are you Mrs. N.'s daughters ? Yes, we are.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

They ² love one another (themselves) ¹ tenderly. To believe one's-self ² ¹
*aiment tendrement * croire*
 happy is to be happy. Virtue is amiable of itself. I have
heureux c'est être (art.) vertu (f) aimable Je viens
 just received his letter, do not speak of it. These apples are
de recevoir lettre (f) ne parlez pas pomme (f)
 excellent, will you have any ? Is Mrs. X. at home ? Yes, she
 — *désirez-vous Madame X. est-elle chez elle ?*
 is (there). I am glad of it. Let us go there. Are you happy ?
bien aise Allons
 We are. I am not always (so). Are you Madame N. ? Yes, I am.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

N.B.—Let the pupil compare and distinguish well between these pronouns and the adjectives *mon, ton, son*, etc., page 27.

99. The possessive pronouns must be of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	masc.	fem.	masc.	fem.
Mine,	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes.</i>
Thine,	<i>le tien,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>les tiennes.</i>
His, hers, its, . . .	<i>le sien,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>les siennes.</i>
Ours,	<i>le nôtre,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>les nôtres.</i>
Yours,	<i>le vôtre,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>les vôtres.</i>
Theirs,	<i>le leur,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>les leurs.</i>
Of mine,	<i>du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne,</i>	<i>des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes, etc.</i>
To mine,	<i>au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne,</i>	<i>aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes, etc.</i>

EXAMPLES.

Ton livre et le mien.	|	Ta plume et la mienne.
Tes livres et les miens.	|	Tes plumes et les miennes.
Votre jardin et le nôtre.	|	Notre maison et la vôtre.
Notre fortune et la leur.	|	Vos amis et les leurs.

EXERCISE XXIX.

My hat and thine are on the lobby table. Your house
chapeau (m) *sur la table du vestibule.* *maison (f)*
 is larger than ours, but our garden is larger than yours. You think
jardin (m) *pensez*
 of your affairs, and I think of mine. The music of the ancients
à affaires (f) *pense* 20 (f) *anciens*
 was very different from ours.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

N. B.—Let the pupil compare these pronouns with the demonstrative adjectives, page 26.

100. The demonstrative pronouns must be of the same gender and number as the substantive they represent.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
masc.	fem.	masc.	fem.
That, . . . <i>celui,</i>	<i>celle,</i>	those, these, <i>ceux,</i>	<i>celles.</i>
This one, . . . <i>celui-ci,</i>	<i>celle-ci,</i>	these, . . . <i>ceux-ci,</i>	<i>celles-ci.</i>
That one, . . . <i>celui-là,</i>	<i>celle-là,</i>	those, . . . <i>ceux-là,</i>	<i>celles-là.</i>
Neuter gender.			
This, <i>ceci.</i>		That, <i>cela,</i> or <i>ça</i> (familiar).	

101. *Ce* (it or that) is used with the verb *être*, or with *qui*, *que*, *dont*, etc.; as *ce qui me plait c'est sa modestie*, what pleases me (it) is his modesty.

102. When *ce* does not come immediately before a substantive, it answers for both genders and numbers; as, *C'est mon frère*, he is my brother. *C'est ma sœur*, she is my sister. *Ce sont vos amis*, they are your friends.

EXERCISE XXX.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. La façade de St. (Saint) Sulpice à Paris est très belle; mais celle de Notre Dâme est encore plus belle. 2. L'ignorance est honteuse chez ceux qui ont eu les moyens de s'instruire. 3. Démocrite et Héraclite

étaient deux philosophes ; celui-ci pleurait toujours, celui-là riait sans cesse. 4. La moitié de quatre c'est deux ; cela est vrai à Pékin comme à Paris. 5. Il y a ceci de particulier dans un petit accident, c'est qu'il a quelquefois de grandes conséquences.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *Que dites-vous de la façade de St. Sulpice à Paris, et de celle de Notre Dâme ?* 2. *Chez qui l'ignorance est-elle honteuse ?* 3. *Qu'avons nous remarqué sur Démocrite et Héraclite ?* 4. *Qu'est ce que la moitié de quatre ? Cela est-il vrai à Pékin ?* 5. *Qu'y a-t-il de particulier dans un petit accident ?*

EXERCISE XXXI.

Bodily health has great influence on the mind's (that of
La santé du corps — (f) *sur* *esprit* (m)
 the mind). The state of the brute is very different from that of
état(m) — (f) —
 man ; the former is clothed and armed by nature, the latter is not ;
vêtu *armé* — (f) *ne l'est pas*
 that one soon attains his vigour and perfection, this one continues
bientôt atteint *vigueur*(f) — (f) *demeure*
 long in infancy. Good masters make good servants ; the
longtemps dans l'enfance. (art.) *maître*(m) *font* *serviteur*(m)
 latter are scarce because the former are not common. This is silk,
rare parceque *ne sont pas commun.* *soie*(f)
 that is cotton.
 — (m)

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

103. The Relative Pronouns are also employed interrogatively. They are,—

Qui, . who, as *l'enfant qui étudie*. The child who studies. *Qui est-là ?* Who is there ?
Qui, . whom, ,, *Qui attendez vous ?* Whom do you expect ?
Que, . whom, what, ,, *La personne que j'attends*. The person whom I expect. *Que désirez-vous ?* What do you wish ?
De qui, of or from whom, ,, *De qui parlez-vous ?* Of whom do you speak ?
Dont, . of or from whom, which, ,, *La personne dont vous parlez*. The person of whom you speak. (never used interrogatively)
Quoi, . what, ,, *Quoi ! il est mort ?* What ! is he dead ? *A quoi pensez vous donc ?* What are you thinking about ?

104. *Lequel* (*what* or *which*) is thus declined :—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	masc.	fem.	masc.	fem.
Nominative, accusative,	<i>lequel</i> ,	<i>laquelle</i> ,	<i>lesquels</i> ,	<i>lesquelles</i> .
Genitive, ablative,	<i>duquel</i> ,	<i>de laquelle</i> ,	<i>desquels</i> ,	<i>desquelles</i> .
Dative,	<i>auquel</i> ,	<i>à laquelle</i> ,	<i>auxquels</i> ,	<i>auxquelles</i> .

Note.—*De qui*, *à qui*, *pour qui*, apply only to persons ; *duquel*, *auquel*, *de laquelle*, etc., apply only to things.

105. *De qui* and *duquel*, etc., are used instead of *dont*, whenever there is a preposition between the English relative *whose*, *of which*, etc., and its antecedent ; as, *l'arbre sur les branches duquel le gui croît*, the tree *on* whose branches the mistletoe grows.

106. *Où* (in which, to which), is applied only to things ; *la maison où je demeure* (Acad.), the house in which I dwell.

107. The Relative Pronouns are repeated in French before every verb.

EXERCISE XXXII.

Translate, read, and parse,—

1. L'enfant qui aime ses parents, qui respecte ses maîtres, qui joue et travaille avec plaisir ; voilà l'enfant vraiment heureux. 2. Nous avons reçu de Dieu les biens dont nous jouissons. 3. Celui-là est véritablement riche qui est content de ce qu'il a. 4. Nous devons travailler à nous rendre de plus en plus capables de remplir les devoirs que notre état nous impose. 5. Le monde peut être comparé à un théâtre où bien des acteurs jouent leur rôle sous un masque.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *Quel est l'enfant vraiment heureux ?* 2. *Qu'avons nous reçu de Dieu ?* 3. *Quel est celui qui est véritablement riche ?* 4. *A quoi doit on travailler ?* 5. *A quoi peut on comparer le monde ?*

EXERCISE XXXIII.

Homer, whose genius is great and simple like nature, is the
Homère *génie*(m) ——— *comme* (art.) ———(f)

first poet, and perhaps the most profound moralist of antiquity.
peut-être profond moraliste (art.) 20 (f)

Philip was assassinated by Pausanias, to whom he had not given
Philippe fut assassiné par — n'avait pas fait

justice. The Alps, on the summit of which the astonished eye
— Alpes(f) sur ¹sommet ²étonné œil(m)

discovers perpetual snow and ice, present at
découvre perpétuel ⁴des neiges(f) ¹et ²des glaces(f) ³présentent au

sunset the most imposing and most magnificent
coucher du soleil ¹imposant (art.) ²magnifique

spectacle. That of which we complain the most bitterly is
— (m) nous plaignons amèrement n'est

not always what affects us most. Scarce are the friends on
pas toujours (that which) chagrine. Rares sont les amis sur

whose fidelity we can rely.
(art.) 20 (f) ou peut se reposer.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

On the Relative Pronouns used interrogatively.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Qui appelle, *or*, Qui est-ce qui appelle? 2. Qui demandez-vous, *or*, Qui est-ce que vous demandez? 3. Que désirez-vous? 4. Qu'en dites-vous? 5. A quoi pensez-vous donc? 6. Pour quel motif refusez-vous cette place? 7. Voici deux routes, laquelle nous faut-il prendre? 8. A laquelle de ces deux compositions donnez-vous le prix? 9. Devinez dans laquelle de ces trois boîtes se trouve la pomme?

EXERCISE XXXV.

Who is that gentleman? It is the doctor. Whom did you see?
médecin. avez-vous vu?

I saw the colonel. Who are those young ladies? They are the
J'ai vu —

minister's daughters. To whom does that house belong? It
*pasteur appartient cette maison(f) **

belongs to me. Which one of these two horses do you prefer? I
appartient préférez-vous? Je

prefer this one. To which one of these paintings do you give
préfère tableaux(m) donnez-vous

the preference? To that beautiful landscape by Poussin.
— (f) paysage(m) par —

108. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

<i>on</i> ,	one, people, we, as,	<i>on dit</i> .	They say, it is said.
<i>l'on</i> (instead of <i>on</i> , after <i>si</i> , <i>et</i> , <i>où</i> , ,, <i>j'irai si l'on vient me chercher</i> . I <i>que</i> , <i>qui</i> , and <i>quoi</i> , to avoid hiatus),			shall go if they come to fetch me.
<i>autrui</i> ,	others,	,, <i>fais du bien à autrui</i> .	Do good to others.
<i>personne</i> ,	anybody,	,, <i>personne l'aurait-il jamais crû?</i>	Would any one ever have believed it?
(interrogative.)			
<i>personne</i> ,	nobody,	,, <i>il n'y a personne ici</i> .	There is nobody here.
(with <i>ne</i> .)			
<i>chacun</i> ,	every one,	,, <i>chacun vit à sa manière</i> .	Each one lives in his own way.
<i>l'un l'autre</i> ,	one another,	,, <i>ils s'aiment l'un l'autre</i> .	They love one another.
<i>l'un et l'autre</i> ,	both,	,, <i>l'un et l'autre sont instruits</i> .	Both are learned.
<i>l'un ou l'autre</i> ,	either,	,, <i>prenez l'un ou l'autre</i> .	Take either.
<i>ni l'un ni l'autre</i> ,	neither,	,, <i>vous n'aurez ni l'un ni l'autre</i> .	You will have neither.
<i>quelqu'un</i> ,	some one,	,, <i>j'attends quelqu'un</i> .	I expect some one.
<i>quiconque</i> ,	whoever,	,, <i>quiconque désobéira sera puni</i> .	Whoever disobeys will be punished.
<i>tout</i> ,	everything, all,	,, <i>tout est dit</i> .	All is said.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

We retain what we have learnt well.	Do not do to others what
<i>retient</i>	<i>Ne fais pas</i>
you should not like others do to you.	Nobody believes it. Every
<i>tu ne voudrais pas</i>	<i>qu'on te fit</i>
one looks for pleasure where he finds it.	Fire and
<i>cherche</i> (art.) <i>plaisir</i> (m)	<i>où il le trouve</i> . (art.) (art.)
water destroy each other. Both relate the same fact. I believe	
<i>se détruisent</i>	<i>rapportent</i> <i>fait</i> <i>Je ne crois</i>
neither of them. All is lost save honour.	
*	<i>est perdu hors l'honneur</i> .

CHAPTER V.

VERBS.

109. A Verb is a word which expresses existence or action.

110. French verbs are divided into five kinds:—ACTIVE, as *aimer*; PASSIVE, as *être aimé*; NEUTER, as *penser*; REFLECTIVE, as *se flatter*; and IMPERSONAL, as *il pleut*.

111. There are besides two auxiliary verbs; *avoir*, to have; and *être*, to be.

112. The terminations of verbs vary according to their moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

MOODS.

113. There are five moods, viz., the *Infinitive*, the *Indicative*, the *Conditional*, the *Imperative*, and the *Subjunctive*.

114. The INFINITIVE presents the verb in an indefinite manner, and without number or person; as, *parler*, to speak; *être*, to be.

115. The INDICATIVE indicates in a positive and direct manner; as, *Je chante*, I sing; *il a fini*, he has finished.

116. The CONDITIONAL affirms with a condition; as, *je lirais si j'avais un livre*, I would read if I had a book.

117. The IMPERATIVE commands, exhorts, requests; as, *répondez-moi*, answer me; *soyons patients*, let us be patient.

118. The SUBJUNCTIVE is so called from its dependence upon, or subordination to another verb to which it is united by a conjunction; as, *il faut que je sorte*, I must go out; *il est possible qu'il soit malade*, it may be that he is ill.

TENSES.

119. There are, strictly speaking, only three tenses, the *Present*, the *Past*, and the *Future*; but these, for the sake of

precision, have been subdivided further, as will be seen in the conjugation of verbs.

NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

120. Verbs have two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*. There are three persons in each number; the *first* stands for the person who speaks; the *second*, for the person spoken to; and the *third*, for the person spoken of.

CONJUGATION.

121. To *Conjugate* a verb is to rehearse it through its different moods, with all its tenses, numbers, and persons.

122. There are in French four conjugations, which are known by the termination of the present infinitive:—

The first	ends in <i>er</i> ,	as <i>parler</i> ,	to speak.
„ second	„ <i>ir</i> ,	„ <i>finir</i> ,	to finish.
„ third	„ <i>oir</i> ,	„ <i>recevoir</i> ,	to receive.
„ fourth	„ <i>re</i> ,	„ <i>vendre</i> ,	to sell.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

123. The two auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être*, helping to conjugate all other verbs in their compound tenses, should be learnt first.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB

AVOIR, TO HAVE.

<i>Simple Tenses.</i>		<i>Compound Tenses.</i>
	INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT.		PAST.
<i>Avoir, to have.</i>		<i>Avoir eu, to have had.</i>
	PARTICIPLES.	
PRESENT.		PAST.
<i>Ayant, having.</i>		<i>Eu, ayant eu, had, having had.</i>

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I have, etc.
 J'ai,
 tu as,
 il a,
 nous avons,
 vous avez,
 ils ont.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

I have had, etc.
 J'ai eu,
 tu as eu,
 il a eu,
 nous avons eu,
 vous avez eu,
 ils ont eu.

IMPERFECT.

I had, etc.
 J'avais,
 tu avais,
 il avait,
 nous avions,
 vous aviez,
 ils avaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had had, etc.
 J'avais eu,
 tu avais eu,
 il avait eu,
 nous avions eu,
 vous aviez eu,
 ils avaient eu.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

I had, etc.
 J'eus,
 tu eus,
 il eut,
 nous eûmes,
 vous eûtes,
 ils eurent.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

I had had, etc.
 J'eus eu,
 tu eus eu,
 il eut eu,
 nous eûmes eu,
 vous eûtes eu,
 ils eurent eu.

FUTURE.

I will or shall have, etc.
 J'aurai,
 tu auras,
 il aura,
 nous aurons,
 vous aurez,
 ils auront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I will or shall have had, etc.
 J'aurai eu,
 tu auras eu,
 il aura eu,
 nous aurons eu,
 vous aurez eu,
 ils auront eu.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I would or should have, etc.

J'aurais,
tu aurais,
il aurait,
nous aurions,
vous auriez,
ils auraient.

PAST.

I would or should have had, etc.

J'aurais eu,
tu aurais eu,
il aurait eu,
nous aurions eu,
vous auriez eu,
ils auraient eu.

IMPERATIVE.

Aie,
qu'il ait,
ayons,
ayez,
qu'ils aient.

*Have (thou).
let him have.
let us have.
have (you).
let them have.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may have, etc.

Que jaie,
que tu aies,
qu'il ait,
que nous ayons,
que vous ayez,
qu'ils aient.

PAST.

That I may have had, etc.

Que j'aie eu,
que tu aies eu,
qu'il ait eu,
que nous ayons eu,
que vous ayez eu,
qu'ils aient eu.

IMPERFECT.

That I might have, etc.

Que j'eusse,
que tu eusses,
qu'il eût,
que nous eussions,
que vous eussiez,
qu'ils eussent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have had, etc.

Que j'eusse eu,
que tu eusses eu,
qu'il eût eu,
que nous eussions eu,
que vous eussiez eu,
qu'ils eussent eu.

Conjugate—

<i>See</i>	{	<i>J'ai un jardin,</i> I have a garden.
RULE 28.	{	„ <i>une maison,</i> „ a house.
	{	„ <i>des chevaux,</i> „ horses.
	{	„ <i>des chiens,</i> „ dogs.
RULE 31.	{	„ <i>un chapeau de paille,</i> „ a straw hat.
	{	„ <i>une montre d'or,</i> „ a gold watch.
	{	„ <i>des gants de soie,</i> „ silk gloves.
RULE 34.	{	„ <i>du courage,</i> „ courage.
	{	„ <i>de la discrétion,</i> „ discretion.
	{	„ <i>de l'esprit,</i> „ wit.
	{	„ <i>des talents,</i> „ talents.
	{	„ <i>du pain frais,</i> „ new bread.
	{	„ <i>de l'eau fraîche,</i> „ fresh water.
	{	„ <i>de la viande froide,</i> „ cold meat.
	{	„ <i>des fruits secs,</i> „ preserved fruits.
	{	„ <i>de bon pain,</i> „ good bread.
	{	„ <i>de bonne viande,</i> „ good meat.
RULE 37.	{	„ <i>de bon vin,</i> „ good wine.
	{	„ <i>de bons légumes,</i> „ good vegetables.
	{	„ <i>de bons raisins,</i> „ good grapes.
	{	„ <i>de bonnes pommes,</i> „ good apples.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.—I have a dictionary. 20 (m) Thou hast a grammar. — (f)

He has a new hat and new boots. My sister has a silk dress.
neuf chapeau(m) *botte*(f) *soie robe*(f)

You have a silver watch. They have health, fortune, and friends.
argent montre(f) *santé*(f) — (f)

IMPERFECT.—I had then a horse and a dog. Thou hadst a carriage
alors *voiture* (f)

and pair. You had a large house and a garden.
à deux chevaux *grand maison*(f) *jardin*(m).

PRETERITE DEFINITE.—I had cakes and wine. We had good
gâteau(m) *vin*(m)

mutton, good beer, and good potatoes. They had only bread
mouton(m) *bière*(f) *pommes-de-terre*(f) n' *que*

and water.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.—I have had much pleasure. He has had too
plaisir(m) *trop*

much coffee. You have had ²beer ¹enough. They have had many
assez de *bien*
difficulties.
des difficultés

PLUPERFECT.—I had had a conversation with him. He had had a
—— (f) *avec*

²severe ¹fever. We had had a good breakfast.
sevère fièvre(f) *déjeuner.*

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.—Thou hadst had great misfortunes. She had
had patience and sweetness.
—— (f) *douceur(f)*

FUTURE.—I shall have milk and strawberries. She will have a
lait(m) *fraises(f)*
harp and a piano. You will have a flute and a violin.
harpe(f) — (m) *flûte(m)* *violon(m).*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.—I shall have had your approbation. You will
have had his advice.
—— (f) *avis(m)*

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.—I should have an answer. Thou wouldst have
réponse(f)
a prize. They would have more friendship.
prix(m) *amitié(f)*
CONDITIONAL PAST.—I should have had money enough. You would
argent(m)

have had too much trouble.
peine(f)

IMPERATIVE.—Have (sing.) prudence. Let us have affection and
gratitude.
—— (f) —— (f)
reconnaissance(f)

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.—That I may have room. That you may have
place(f)
comfort. That they may have success.
bien-être(m) *succès(m)*

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.—That thou mayest have had presence of mind.
présence(f) d'esprit
That we may have had (no art.) good luck.
chance(f)

SUBJECTIVE IMPERFECT.—That I might have freedom. That she
liberté(f)
might have less trouble. That we might have less to do.
moins peine(f) *moins à faire*

SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT.—That he might have had a good idea.
idée(f)
 That you might have had more industry.
savoir-faire(m)

124. IDIOMATIC USE OF *avoir*.

Conjugate—

<i>J'ai chaud,</i>	. . . . .	{	<i>literally,</i> I have warmth,
		{	<i>for,</i> I am warm.
„ <i>froid,</i>	. . . . .		„ cold.
„ <i>faim,</i>	. . . . .		„ hungry.
„ <i>soif,</i>	. . . . .		„ thirsty.
„ <i>sommeil,</i>	. . . . .		„ sleepy.
„ <i>peur,</i>	. . . . .		„ afraid.
„ <i>honte,</i>	. . . . .		„ ashamed.
„ <i>raison,</i>	. . . . .		„ right.
„ <i>tort,</i>	. . . . .		„ wrong.
„ <i>bon cœur,</i>	. . . . .		„ kind-hearted.
„ <i>envie de,</i>	. . . . .		„ desirous of.
„ <i>besoin de,</i>	. . . . .		„ in need of.
„ <i>mal à la tête,</i>	. . . . .	{	<i>literally,</i> I have pain at the head.
		{	<i>for,</i> I have a headache.
„ <i>mal au pied,</i>	. . . . .		„ sore foot.
„ <i>mal au doigt,</i>	. . . . .		„ sore finger.
„ <i>froid aux mains, aux pieds, etc.,</i>	. . . . .		„ cold hands, cold feet, etc.

125. *Avoir* is also employed, 1stly, in speaking of the age ; as, *quel âge avez vous ? J'ai quinze ans.* How old are you ? I am fifteen years old. 2dly, in speaking of dimensions ; as, *cet homme a six pieds deux pouces,* that man is six feet two inches. *Cette colonne a plus de deux cents pieds de haut, or de hauteur.* This column is more than two hundred feet high.

126. *Avoir-beau* followed by an infinitive is an idiomatic locution, which cannot be literally translated into English. For example : *Ils ont beau dire et beau faire, je ne consentirai jamais à une pareille proposition.* They may say or do whatever they like, I shall never consent to such a proposal. *J'ai eu beau raisonner, je n'ai pu le convaincre.* I reasoned as well as I could, I was not able to convince him. *Vous*

avez beau courir, vous ne l'attraperez pas. You may run as fast as you can, you will not catch him.

EXERCISE XL.

I am hungry. You are thirsty. We are warm. They are cold. I was sleepy. She was kind-hearted. You were ashamed of your conduct *conduite*(f).

They were in need of money. They were afraid to lose their *argent*(m). (imperf.) *de perdre*

lawsuit. You were right in going away. I have had a head-*procès*(m). (pret. def.) *de partir*

ache the whole² day¹. She has had a sore throat. He has had a *journée*(f). *gosier*(m).

sore foot. You would have been wrong to abandon that undertaking. *d'abandonner* *entreprise* (f).

I am fourteen years old, and my sister is two years older than myself. *de plus* *moi*.

This wall is seven feet high, and one foot nine inches thick. *mur* *d'épaisseur*.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB

ÊTRE, TO BE.*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Être, *to be*.

PAST.

Avoir été, *to have been*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Étant, *being*.

PAST.

Été, ayant été, *been, having been*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I am, etc.
Je suis,
tu es,
il est,

PRETERITE INDEF.

I have been, etc.
J'ai été,
tu as été,
il a été,

nous sommes,
vous êtes,
ils sont.

IMPERFECT.

I was, etc.
J'étais,
tu étais,
il était,
nous étions,
vous étiez,
ils étaient,

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

I was, etc.
Je fus,
tu fus,
il fut,
nous fûmes,
vous fûtes,
ils furent.

FUTURE.

I will or shall be, etc.
Je serai,
tu seras,
il sera,
nous serons,
vous serez,
ils seront.

nous avons été,
vous avez été,
ils ont été.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been, etc.
J'avais été,
tu avais été,
il avait été,
nous avions été,
vous aviez été,
ils avaient été.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

I had been, etc.
J'eus été,
tu eus été,
il eut été,
nous eûmes été,
vous eûtes été,
ils eurent été.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I will or shall have been, etc.
J'aurai été,
tu auras été,
il aura été,
nous aurons été,
vous aurez été,
ils auront été.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I would or should be, etc.
Je serais,
tu serais,
il serait,

PAST.

I would or should have been, etc.
J'aurais été,
tu aurais été,
il aurait été,

nous serions,
vous seriez,
ils seraient.

nous aurions été,
vous auriez été,
ils auraient été.

IMPERATIVE.

Sois,	<i>Be (thou).</i>
qu'il soit,	<i>let him be.</i>
soyons,	<i>let us be.</i>
soyez,	<i>be (you).</i>
qu'ils soient.	<i>let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may be, etc.
Que je sois,
que tu sois,
qu'il soit,
que nous soyons,
que vous soyez,
qu'ils soient.

PAST.

That I may have been, etc.
Que j'aie été,
que tu aies été,
qu'il ait été,
que nous ayons été,
que vous ayez été,
qu'ils aient été.

IMPERFECT.

That I might be, etc.
Que je fusse,
que tu fusses,
qu'il fût,
que nous fussions,
que vous fussiez,
qu'ils fussent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have been, etc.
Que j'eusse été,
que tu eusses été,
qu'il eût été,
que nous eussions été,
que vous eussiez été,
qu'ils eussent été.

Conjugate—

Je suis attentif, I am attentive.
„ *aimé,* . „ loved.
„ *occupé,* . „ busy.
„ *inconstant,* „ inconstant.
„ *heureux,* „ happy.
„ *malade,* „ ill.
„ *Français,* „ a Frenchman.
„ *Anglais,* „ an Englishman.
„ *Écossais,* „ a Scotchman.
„ *Irlandais,* „ an Irishman.

Je suis Espagnol, I am a Spaniard.
„ *Italien,* . „ an Italian.
„ *Américain,* „ an American.
„ *Allemand,* „ a German.
„ *Suisse,* . „ a Swiss.
„ *docteur,* . „ a doctor.
„ *avocat,* . „ an advocate.
„ *professeur,* „ a professor.
„ *artiste,* . „ an artist.
„ *marchand,* „ a merchant.

127. IDIOMATIC PHRASES USED WITH *être*.

<i>Etre à cheval,</i>	.	.	.	To be on horseback.
„ <i>à genoux,</i>	.	.	.	„ on one's knees.
„ <i>chez soi,</i>	.	.	.	„ at home.
„ <i>à la campagne,</i>	.	.	.	„ in the country.
„ <i>en voyage,</i>	.	.	.	„ travelling.
„ <i>en train,</i>	.	.	.	„ busy at.
„ <i>de service,</i>	.	.	.	„ on duty.
„ <i>par terre,</i>	.	.	.	„ on the ground.
„ <i>à jeun,</i>	.	.	.	„ fasting.
„ <i>en négligé, en deshabillé,</i>	(these expressions are used in English.)			
„ <i>en robe de chambre,</i>	.	.	.	to have the dressing-gown on.
„ <i>en colère,</i>	.	.	.	to be angry.
„ <i>de bonne humeur,</i>	.	.	.	„ in good humour.

EXERCISE XLI.

ON THE VERB *être*, TO BE.

INDICATIVE PRESENT.—We are always busy. You are very happy.
toujours occupé.

I am an Englishman. My singing-master is an Italian.
maître de chant

IMPERFECT.—I was at home. She was ill. You were angry. We were on horseback. They were on their knees.

*

PRETERITE.—Thou wast punished. He was inflexible. We were surprised. They were betrayed.
puni. *surpris.* *trahi.*

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.—I have been in the country. She has been to church. We have been invited.
à l'église. *invité.*

PLUPERFECT.—I had been too hasty. He had been on duty. We had been travelling (on travel).
empressé.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.—I had been more prudent. She had been deceived. We had been ready.
trompé. *prêt.*

FUTURE.—I shall be a soldier. He will be a sailor. They will be merchants.
soldat. *matelot.*
négociants.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.—He will have been rewarded. We shall have been praised.
loué. récompensé.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.—I should be very glad. We should be delighted to make his acquaintance. You would be less open.
charmé de faire connaissance(f). ouvert.
bien aise.

CONDITIONAL PAST.—I should have been so happy to see you. You would have been very pleased to hear the concert.
si heureux de voir content d'entendre —(m)

IMPERATIVE.—Be (thou) faithful. Let us be kind to everybody. Soldiers, be brave. Let them be free.
fidèle. aimable envers tout le monde. libre.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.—That I may be satisfied. That we may be in good humour. That they may be happy.
satisfait.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.—That he may have been the first. That you may have been successful.
heureux.

SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT.—That I might be inflexible. That she might be economical. That you might be less prodigal.
économe. prodigue.

SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT.—That thou mightest have been beaten. That he might have been victorious. That we might have been convinced.
battu. victorieux. convaincu.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE VERBS

AVOIR AND ETRE.

EXERCISE XLII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Pour être heureux il faut avoir ce qu'on désire. 2. On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi. 3. Le Rhône est un fleuve très rapide qui a son embouchure dans la Méditerranée. 4. Les chameaux sont des animaux ruminants; ils ont deux estomacs. 5. Les Spartiates étaient un peuple sobre et vertueux. 6. Le poète André Chénier n'avait que trente-deux ans lorsqu'il fut condamné à mort par le Tribunal Révolutionnaire. 7. Rome a eu des rois, des consuls et des empereurs.

8. Quelque fortune que nous ayons, nous ne sommes pas dispensés du travail ni libres de soucis. 9. Si vous voulez qu'on ait du respect pour vous, il faut que vous en ayez pour les autres.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *Que faut-il pour être heureux?*
2. *De qui a-t-on souvent besoin?*
3. *Qu'est-ce que le Rhône? Où a-t-il son embouchure?*
4. *Quelle espèce d'animaux sont les chameaux?*
5. *Qu'étaient les Spartiates?*
6. *Quel âge avait le poète André Chénier quand il fut condamné à mort par le Tribunal Révolutionnaire?*
7. *Qu'a eu Rome?*
8. *Sommes-nous dispensés du travail ou libres de soucis, si nous avons de la fortune?*
9. *Que faut-il que nous fassions, si nous voulons qu'on ait du respect pour nous?*

EXERCISE XLIII.

To be good is better than to have been good. God alone is great.
d'

Having few cares, thou art nearly happy. The less hatred is just
peu de soucis *presque* *Moins haine (f) juste*

the more cruel it is. These Italian gentlemen are always cold, even
plus ² ¹ *même*

when we are warm. We are modern now, we shall be ancient in
moderne aujourd'hui *ancien*

a few centuries. You would be better if you were more religious.
quelque siècle (m). *religieux.*

We should be wrong to rely on the morrow. Let us be
compter sur *lendemain (m).*

economical if we wish to be rich. I must be in London
économe *voulons* *riche. Il faut (subj. pr.) à*

to-morrow morning.
demain matin.

USE OF *AVOIR* AND *ETRE* AS AUXILIARIES.

128. The verb *avoir* is used in conjugating—1. Its own compound tenses; as, *j'ai eu*. 2. The compound tenses of *être*; as, *j'ai été*. 3. The compound tenses of all active verbs; as, *j'ai aimé*, I have loved. 4. The compound tenses of some neuter verbs; as, *j'ai dormi*, I have slept.

129. The verb *être* is used in conjugating—1. All passive verbs; as, *je suis aimé*, I am loved. 2. The compound tenses of all reflective verbs; as, *je me suis flatté*, I have flattered myself; and of some neuter verbs; as, *je suis tombé*, I have fallen.

REGULAR VERBS.

130. There are in French, as we have already said, four conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the Infinitive present :—

The first	ends in <i>er</i> ,	as <i>parler</i> ,	to speak.
„ second	„ <i>ir</i> ,	„ <i>finir</i> ,	to finish.
„ third	„ <i>oir</i> ,	„ <i>recevoir</i> ,	to receive.
„ fourth	„ <i>re</i> ,	„ <i>vendre</i> ,	to sell.

131. All that precedes this infinitive termination is called the radical, or root of the verb, and does not change. The termination changes according to moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

132. A verb is *regular* when it is conjugated in all its tenses and persons like one of the four conjugations.

133. It is *irregular* when it deviates from the rules by which regular verbs are conjugated.

134. It is *defective* when it wants some mood, tense, or person.

135. SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE FOUR
ELEMENTARY CONJUGATIONS.

Infinitive Present.	Participle Present.	Participle Past.	Indicative Present.	Preterite Definite.
FIRST CONJUGATION.				
Parl-er,	| Parl-ant,	| Parl-é,	| Je parl-e,	| Je parl-ai.
SECOND CONJUGATION.				
Fin-ir,	| Fin-issant,	| Fin-i,	| Je fin-is,	| Je fin-is.
THIRD CONJUGATION.				
Rec-evoir,	| Rec-evant,	| Reç-u,	| Je reç-ois,	| Je reç-us.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.				
Vend-re,	| Vend-ant,	| Vend-u,	| Je vend-s,	| Je vend-is.

FIRST CONJUGATION, IN *ER*.

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATION.

136. The first conjugation comprises the greater number of French verbs, including about five thousand, most of them being derived from the Latin verbs ending in *are*, as:—

	From the Latin.		From the Latin.
<i>aimer</i> , .	to love, .	<i>amare</i> .	<i>laver</i> , .
<i>appeler</i> , .	to call, .	<i>appellare</i> .	to wash, .
<i>déclarer</i> ,	to declare,	<i>declarare</i> .	<i>lavare</i> .
<i>espérer</i> ,	to hope, .	<i>sperare</i> .	<i>narrer</i> ,
			to relate,
			<i>narrare</i> .
			<i>porter</i> , .
			to carry,
			<i>portare</i> .
			<i>voler</i> , .
			to fly, .
			<i>volare</i> , etc.

PARLER, *to speak*.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Parler, *to speak*.

Avoir parlé, *to have spoken*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Parlant, *speaking*.

Parlé, ayant parlé, *spoken, having spoken*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

I speak, etc.

I have spoken, etc.

Je parle,

J'ai parlé,

tu parles,

tu as parlé,

il parle,

il a parlé,

nous parlons,

nous avons parlé,

vous parlez,

vous avez parlé,

ils parlent.

ils ont parlé.

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

I was speaking or *spoke*, etc.

I had spoken, etc.

Je parlais,

J'avais parlé,

tu parlais,

tu avais parlé,

il parlait,

il avait parlé,

nous parlions,

nous avions parlé,

vous parliez,

vous aviez parlé,

ils parlaient.

ils avaient parlé.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

I spoke, etc.
 Je parlai,
 tu parlas,
 il parla,
 nous parlâmes,
 vous parlâtes,
 ils parlèrent.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

I had spoken, etc.
 J'eus parlé,
 tu eus parlé,
 il eut parlé,
 nous eûmes parlé,
 vous eûtes parlé,
 ils eurent parlé.

FUTURE.

I will or shall speak, etc.

Je parlerai,
 tu parleras,
 il parlera,
 nous parlerons,
 vous parlerez,
 ils parleront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I will or shall have spoken, etc.

J'aurai parlé,
 tu auras parlé,
 il aura parlé,
 nous aurons parlé,
 vous aurez parlé,
 ils auront parlé.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I would or should speak, etc.

Je parlerais,
 tu parlerais,
 il parlerait,
 nous parlerions,
 vous parleriez,
 ils parleraient.

PAST.

I would have spoken, etc.

J'aurais parlé,
 tu aurais parlé,
 il aurait parlé,
 nous aurions parlé,
 vous auriez parlé,
 ils auraient parlé.

IMPERATIVE.

Parle,
 Qu'il parle,
 Parlons,
 Parlez,
 Qu'ils parlent.

Speak (thou).
Let him speak.
Let us speak.
Speak (you).
Let them speak.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may speak, etc.
 Que je parle,
 que tu parles,
 qu'il parle,
 que nous parlions,
 que vous parliez,
 qu'ils parlent.

PAST.

That I may have spoken, etc.
 Que j'aie parlé,
 que tu aies parlé,
 qu'il ait parlé,
 que nous ayons parlé,
 que vous ayez parlé,
 qu'ils aient parlé.

IMPERFECT.

That I might speak, etc.
 Que je parlasse,
 que tu parlasses,
 qu'il parlât,
 que nous parlussions,
 que vous parlassiez,
 qu'ils parlissent,

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have spoken, etc.
 Que j'eusse parlé,
 que tu eusses parlé,
 qu'il eût parlé,
 que nous eussions parlé,
 que vous eussiez parlé,
 qu'ils eussent parlé.

Conjugate in the same manner¹—

<i>aimer</i> , to love.	<i>montrer</i> , to show.
<i>chanter</i> , „ sing.	<i>nommer</i> , „ name.
<i>donner</i> , „ give.	<i>porter</i> , „ carry.
<i>enseigner</i> , „ teach.	<i>raconter</i> , „ relate.
<i>fermer</i> , „ shut.	<i>remercier</i> , „ thank.
<i>frapper</i> , „ strike.	<i>sauter</i> , „ jump.
<i>garder</i> , „ keep.	<i>supplier</i> , „ beseech.
<i>laisser</i> , „ leave.	<i>tuer</i> , „ kill.
<i>laver</i> , „ wash.	<i>voler</i> , { „ rob.
<i>louer</i> , „ praise.	{ „ fly.

VERBS WITH A REGIMEN.

<i>adorer Dieu</i> ,	to adore God.
<i>allumer le feu</i> ,	„ light the fire.
<i>conjuguer un verbe</i> ,	„ conjugate a verb.
<i>causer à voix basse</i> ,	„ talk in a whisper.

¹ We give in these vocabularies the most important verbs, and only those which differ in their roots from the English corresponding verbs, the others being easy to learn and to understand.

<i>chanter juste</i> ,	to sing in tune.
— <i>faux</i> ,	„ — out of tune.
<i>parler Français</i> ,	„ speak French.
— <i>haut</i> ,	„ — aloud.
<i>penser à son ami</i> ,	„ think of one's friend.
<i>toucher du piano</i> ,	„ play the piano.
<i>jouer du violon</i> ,	„ — the violin.
<i>réciter sa leçon</i> ,	„ repeat one's lesson.
<i>raconter une histoire</i> ,	„ relate a story.
<i>tailler une plume</i> ,	„ sharpen a pen.
<i>timbrer une lettre</i>	„ put a stamp on a letter.
<i>soigner un malade</i> ,	„ nurse a sick person.
<i>garder un secret</i> ,	„ keep a secret.
<i>frapper à la porte</i> ,	„ knock at the door.
<i>marcher vite</i> ,	„ walk fast.
<i>danser avec grâce</i> ,	„ dance gracefully.
<i>sauter par la fenêtre</i> ,	„ jump out of the window.
	etc. etc.

OBSERVATIONS ON SOME VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION
ENDING IN *cer*, *ger*, *eler*, *eter*, *yer*, etc.

136. *Note*.—Many verbs of the first conjugation, although regular, present peculiarities in the orthography of some of their tenses.

137. Verbs ending in *cer* take a cedilla under the *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, thus preserving the soft sound; as, *placer*, *il plaça*, *avancer*, *nous avançons*.

138. Verbs ending in *ger* take an *e* mute after the *g* before *a* and *o*, thus again preserving the soft sound; as, *manger*, *nous mangeons*; *arranger*, *il arrangeait*.

139. Verbs ending in *eler* and *eter* generally double the *l* and *t* when followed by *e* mute; as, *appeler*, *j'appelle*; *jeter*, *il jettera*. Except *geler* and derivatives, *acheter*, *peler*, *bourreler*, *déceler*, *harceler*, *étiqueter*, *coqueter*, *colleter*, *décolleter*; and the verbs where the *e* preceding the *l* or *t* have an acute accent, as *recéler*, *empiéter*; all of which take a grave accent over the *e* before *l* or *t*, when followed by a mute syllable; as, *j'achète*, *il gèle*, *ils empiètent*.

140. When the last syllable of the infinitive of a verb in

er is preceded by *e* mute or *é*, that letter is changed into *è*, with grave accent before a mute syllable ; as, *céder, je cède ; protéger, je protège.*

141. Verbs ending in *yer* change *y* into *i* before an *e* mute ; as, *payer, je paie, je paierai.*

Note.—*Aller* and *envoyer* are given among the irregular verbs.

Conjugate according to the foregoing rules—

<i>amorcer,</i> . . . to bait.	<i>épeler,</i> . . . to spell.
<i>balancer,</i> . . . ,, swing.	<i>jeter,</i> . . . ,, throw.
<i>glacer,</i> . . . ,, freeze.	<i>rappeler,</i> . . . ,, recall.
<i>sucer,</i> . . . ,, suck.	<i>acheter,</i> . . . ,, buy.
<i>affliger,</i> . . . ,, afflict.	<i>digérer,</i> . . . ,, digest.
<i>interroger,</i> . . . ,, question.	<i>régner,</i> . . . ,, reign.
<i>manger,</i> . . . ,, eat.	<i>balayer,</i> . . . ,, sweep.
<i>nager,</i> . . . ,, swim.	<i>bégayer,</i> . . . ,, stammer.
<i>plonger,</i> . . . ,, dive.	<i>essayer,</i> . . . ,, try.
<i>venger,</i> . . . ,, avenge.	<i>nettoyer,</i> . . . ,, clean.
<i>voyager,</i> . . . ,, travel.	<i>essuyer,</i> . . . ,, wipe.
<i>atteler,</i> . . . ,, yoke.	<i>effrayer,</i> . . . ,, frighten.
<i>cacheter,</i> . . . ,, seal.	<i>tutoyer,</i> . . . ,, thou-and-thee.

VERBS WITH A REGIMEN.

<i>pincer de la harpe,</i> . . . to play the harp.
,, <i>de la guitare,</i> . . . ,, ,, the guitar.
<i>prononcer distinctement,</i> . . . pronounce distinctly.
<i>charger un canon,</i> . . . ,, load a gun.
<i>nager entre deux eaux,</i> . . . ,, swim under water (<i>fig.</i>) to temporize.
<i>venger un affront,</i> . . . ,, avenge an insult.
<i>voyager incognito,</i> . . . ,, travel incognito.
<i>cacheter une lettre,</i> . . . ,, seal a letter.
<i>épeler un mot,</i> . . . ,, spell a word.
<i>peler une pomme,</i> . . . ,, peel an apple.
<i>opérer avec succès,</i> . . . ,, operate successfully.
<i>cotoyer le rivage,</i> . . . ,, coast along (the shore).
<i>tutoyer son camarade,</i> . . . ,, thou-and-thee one's comrade.
<i>essuyer ses larmes,</i> . . . ,, dry one's tears.
,, <i>un refus,</i> . . . ,, be refused, (<i>liter.</i>) to experience a refusal.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE VERBS OF THE
FIRST CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XLIV.

Observe.—In these exercises we give only the root of verbs; the pupil will find the terminations.

To shut the door. To have praised the pupil. Having forgiven
ferm— porte (f). lou— élève. pardonn—
(to) his enemy. You walk too fast. He confessed his
ennemi. march— trop. avou—(pret. def.)
error. She was singing. He will give you his advice. He would
erreur (f). avis (m).
relate us a story. Lend me your pencil. Let us thank heaven.
prêt— merci— ciel (m).
That I may speak fluently. That thou mightest have jumped out of
couramment. saut—
the window. He was sucking a sugar-cane. They were eating
suc— canne-à-sucre (f). mange—
strawberries. We travel in summer. That child stammers. The
fraises (f). voyag— en bégay—. *La*
servant is sweeping the staircase. I shall buy a dictionary. He
servante balay— (pl.) escaliers. achet—
is throwing stones. Throw that paper into the fire.
jet— pierre (m). au feu.

EXERCISE XLV.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. La religion nous commande de pardonner à nos ennemis, pour que Dieu nous pardonne. 2. Les hommes ayant oublié le Créateur adorèrent de fausses divinités. 3. Celui qui cherche la gloire doit affronter les difficultés et les dangers. 4. Le sage préfère la science à la richesse. 5. Les Chinois se servent en mangeant de deux petits bâtons d'ivoire ou d'ébène, qu'ils manient avec beaucoup de dextérité. 6. Caligula exigeait des Romains qu'ils lui accordassent les mêmes honneurs qu'à un dieu. 7. L'Évangile renferme ce beau précepte : aime ton prochain comme toi-même. 8. Les ingrats mériteraient que le soleil ne les éclairât pas. 9. Les historiens regardent Charlemagne comme un des plus grands princes qui aient jamais régné.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *Que nous commande la religion?* 2. *Que firent les hommes après avoir oublié le Créateur?* 3. *Que doit affronter celui qui cherche la gloire?* 4. *Qui préfère la science à la richesse?* 5. *De quoi se*

servent les Chinois en mangeant? 6. *Qu'exigeait Caligula des Romains?*
7. *Quel précepte renferme l'Évangile?* 8. *Que mériteraient les ingrats?*
9. *Que pensent les historiens de Charlemagne?*

EXERCISE XLVI.

I cannot find my penknife; lend me yours, if you please. The
Je ne puis trouv— canif (m) prêt— s'il vous plait.
(deceitful man) is often deceived. We love and (we) praise virtue,
trompeur souvent tromp— lou— vertu (f)
but we seldom practise it. The dog barks; the wolf howls;
mais rarement pratiqu— chien aboy— loup (m) hurl—
the sheep bleats; the pig grunts; the ass brays; the cat
brebis (f) bêl— cochon (m) grogn— âne (m) bray— chat (m)
mews; the cow bellows; the hen clucks; the crow
miaul— vache (f) beugl— poule (f) glouss— corbeau (m)
croaks; the dove coos. The Egyptians embalmed their
croass— colombe (f) roucoull— embaum—
dead; the Romans burnt them. God created man to love. The
mort (pl) Romain brûl— cré— pour
Spaniards found in America a tribe who were eating
Éspagnol trouv— en Amérique peuple (m) mange— (sing.)
serpents.
les —

Many people would lead a happier life if they employed
Beaucoup de gens men— vie (f) employ—
their time better. Let us honour those who give us good
temps (m). honor— donn—
counsels. An Athenian law ordered that, when the city was
conseil (m). d'Athènes loi (f) ordonn— que lorsque ville (f)
besieged they should kill all useless inhabitants. Lycurgus, by one of
assiég— on tu— inutile habitant (m) Lycurgue par
his laws, had prohibited that one should light those who
défendu éclair— (imp. subj.)
(went home) late from a feast, that the fear of not
retourn— tard festin (m) afin que crainte de ne pouvoir
finding their house might prevent them (from getting
trouv— (inf. pr.) maison empêch—
intoxicated). The Romans ordered that Coriolanus should be
de s'enivrer ordonn— (imperf. subj.)
precipitated from the top of the Tarpeian rock.
précipit— haut (m) Tarpéien roche (f).

SECOND CONJUGATION, IN *IR*.FINIR, *to finish*.*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Finir, *to finish*.

PAST.

Avoir fini, *to have finished*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Finissant, *finishing*.

PAST.

Fini, ayant fini, *finished, having finished*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I finish, etc.

Je finis,

tu finis,

il finit,

nous finissons,

vous finissez,

ils finissent.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

I have finished, etc.

J'ai fini,

tu as fini,

il a fini,

nous avons fini,

vous avez fini,

ils ont fini.

IMPERFECT.

I was finishing, etc.

Je finissais,

tu finissais,

il finissait,

nous finissions,

vous finissiez,

ils finissaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I have finished, etc.

J'avais fini,

tu avais fini,

il avait fini,

nous avions fini,

vous aviez fini,

ils avaient fini.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

I finished, etc.

Je finis,

tu finis,

il finit,

nous finîmes,

vous finîtes,

ils finirent.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

I had finished, etc.

J'eus fini,

tu eus fini,

il eut fini,

nous eûmes fini,

vous eûtes fini,

ils eurent fini.

FUTURE.

I will or shall finish, etc.

Je finirai,
 tu finiras,
 il finira,
 nous finirons,
 vous finirez,
 ils finiront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I will or shall have finished, etc.

J'aurai fini,
 tu auras fini,
 il aura fini,
 nous aurons fini,
 vous aurez fini,
 ils auront fini.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I would or should finish, etc.

Je finirais,
 tu finirais,
 il finirait,
 nous finirions,
 vous finiriez,
 ils finiraient.

PAST.

I would have finished, etc.

J'aurais fini,
 tu aurais fini,
 il aurait fini,
 nous aurions fini,
 vous auriez fini,
 ils auraient fini.

IMPERATIVE.

Finis,
 qu'il finisse,
 finissons,
 finissez,
 qu'ils finissent.

Finish (thou).
Let him finish.
Let us finish.
Finish (you).
Let them finish.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may finish, etc.

Que je finisse,
 que tu finisses,
 qu'il finisse,
 que nous finissions,
 que vous finissiez,
 qu'ils finissent.

PAST.

That I may have finished, etc.

Que j'aie fini,
 que tu aies fini,
 qu'il ait fini,
 que nous ayons fini,
 que vous ayez fini,
 qu'ils aient fini,

IMPERFECT.

That I might finish, etc.

Que je finisse,
 que tu finisses,
 qu'il finît,
 que nous finissions,
 que vous finissiez,
 qu'ils finissent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have finished, etc.

Que j'eusse fini,
 que tu eusses fini,
 qu'il eût fini,
 que nous eussions fini,
 que vous eussiez fini,
 qu'ils eussent fini.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>agir</i> ,	to act.	<i>guérir</i> ,	to cure.
<i>avertir</i> ,	„ warn.	<i>nourrir</i> ,	„ feed.
<i>bâtir</i> ,	„ build.	<i>punir</i> ,	„ punish.
<i>choisir</i> ,	„ choose.	<i>remplir</i> ,	„ fill.
<i>établir</i> ,	„ establish.	<i>trahir</i> ,	„ betray.
<i>fleurir</i> ,	} „ flourish. „ blossom.	<i>vernir</i> ,	„ varnish.

VERBS WITH A REGIMEN.

<i>choisir une profession</i>,	. . . . .	to choose a profession.
<i>guérir un malade</i>,	. . . . .	„ cure a patient.
<i>endormir un enfant</i>,	. . . . .	„ lull a child to sleep.
<i>jouir d'une bonne santé</i>,	. . . . .	„ enjoy good health.
<i>subir un châtement</i>,	. . . . .	„ undergo a punishment.
<i>remplir le verre</i>,	. . . . .	„ fill up the glass.
<i>frémir d'horreur</i>,	. . . . .	„ shudder with horror.
<i>rougir de honte</i>,	. . . . .	„ blush with shame.
<i>pâler d'effroi</i>,	. . . . .	„ grow pale from fright.
<i>pétrir le pain</i>,	. . . . .	„ knead bread.

OBSERVATIONS ON A FEW VERBS OF THE SECOND
CONJUGATION.

142. Verbs in *ir*, whose present participle is not *issant*, do not belong to the regular form.

143. The verb *bénir*, to bless, has two participles past, viz., *béni* (m), *bénie* (f), and *béni* (m), *bénite* (f); the latter is employed only in speaking of things consecrated by a religious rite; as, *du pain béni*, *de l'eau bénite*.

144. The verb *fleurir* has two participles present and derivatives. When *fleurir* means *to blossom*, it makes *fleurissant*, *fleurissait*, etc.; when it is used figuratively, in the sense of *to be prosperous*, it makes *florissant*, *florissait*, etc.

145. The verb *haïr* loses its diæresis in the three persons singular of the present indicative, *je hais*, *tu hais*, *il hait*; and in the second person singular of the imperative, *hais*.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XLVII.

To build a palace. A well-chosen spot. A badly-chosen
bât— palais(m) chois— lieu(m)
 opportunity. She cherishes her mother. We are enjoying good
occasion (f) chér— jou—
 health. You have punished the idlers. They were building a
santé(f) pun— paresseux bât—
 tower. We accomplished our design. I had warned you. You had
tour(f) accomp— dessein(m) avert—
 done before her. I shall feed pigeons. She will soften your grief.
fin— avant nourr— — adouc— douleur(f)
 They will have (become old). I should act (at once). Gentlemen,
vieill— ag— sur le champ.
 let us fill our glasses. That you may succeed. That they may
rempl— verre(m) réuss—
 have finished sooner. That they might embellish their (country house.)
plutôt embell— maison de campagne

EXERCISE XLVIII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Avant de parler et surtout avant d'agir il faut réfléchir. 2. Tout ce que l'homme bâtit est fragile. 3. La guerre affaiblissait Rome plus que ses conquêtes ne l'agrandissaient. 4. Balthazar subit le châtement dont Daniel l'avait averti. 5. La mer Rouge eut englouti en un instant l'armée de Pharaon. 6. Les spectacles du cirque endurcirent les Romains. 7. Dieu récompensera les bons et punira les méchants. 8. Après la bataille d'Austerlitz toute l'Europe retentit du nom de Napoléon et du bruit de ses conquêtes. 9. Il faut que nous remplissions nos devoirs si nous voulons que le ciel nous bénisse.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *Que faut-il faire avant de parler ou d'agir?* 2. *Qu'est-ce qui est fragile?* 3. *Quel était l'effet de la guerre sur Rome?* 4. *Quel châti-ment subit Balthazar?* 5. *Quel fut le sort de l'armée de Pharaon?* 6. *Qu'est-ce qui endurecit les Romains?* 7. *Que fera Dieu?* 8. *Qu'ar-riva-t-il après la bataille d'Austerlitz?* 9. *Que faut-il que nous fas-sions si nous voulons que le ciel nous bénisse?*

EXERCISE XLIX.

The wind was sighing among the leaves. We sympathize more
vent bru— dans le feuillage. On compât— mieux
 with the misfortunes which we have experienced ourselves. Fright
à malheur (m) on éprouvés soi-même (art.) peur (f)
 magnifies objects. You will increase your income if you diminish
gross— (art.) objets (m). gross— revenu (m) diminuez
 your expenses. Commerce and industry enrich a nation.
dépense (m). (art.) — (m) (art.) 20 (f) enrich— — (f).
 Napoleon invaded Russia in 1812, and (from that time) his star
— envah— la Russie en — dès lors étoile (f)
 (grew dim). I would not betray the interests of an enemy¹ if he
pâl— ne trah— pas. intérêts ennemi (m) s'
 trusted them to me. There is nothing so troublesome that study
confiait Il n'y a rien de si fâcheux (art.) étude (f)
 will not alleviate.
ne adouc—(subj. pr.)

THIRD CONJUGATION, IN OIR.

RECEVOIR, to receive.

*Simple Tenses.**Compound Tenses.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Recevoir, to receive.

Avoir reçu, to have received.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Recevant, receiving.

Reçu, ayant reçu, received,
having received.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I receive, etc.
 Je reçois,
 tu reçois,
 il reçoit,
 nous recevons,
 vous recevez,
 ils reçoivent.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

I have received, etc.
 J'ai reçu,
 tu as reçu,
 il a reçu,
 nous avons reçu,
 vous avez reçu,
 ils ont reçu.

IMPERFECT.

I was receiving, etc.
 Je recevais,
 tu recevais,
 il recevait,
 nous recevions,
 vous receviez,
 ils recevaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had received, etc.
 J'avais reçu,
 tu avais reçu,
 il avait reçu,
 nous avions reçu,
 vous aviez reçu,
 ils avaient reçu.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

I received, etc.
 Je reçus,
 tu reçus,
 il reçut,
 nous reçûmes,
 vous reçûtes,
 ils reçurent.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

I had received, etc.
 J'eus reçu,
 tu eus reçu,
 il eut reçu,
 nous eûmes reçu,
 vous eûtes reçu,
 ils eurent reçu.

FUTURE.

I will or shall receive, etc.
 Je recevrai,
 tu recevras,
 il recevra,
 nous recevrons,
 vous recevrez,
 ils recevront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I will or shall have received, etc.
 J'aurai reçu,
 tu auras reçu,
 il aura reçu,
 nous aurons reçu,
 vous aurez reçu,
 ils auront reçu.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I would or should receive, etc.

Je recevrais,
 tu recevrais,
 il recevrait,
 nous recevriions,
 vous recevriez,
 ils recevraient.

PAST.

I would have received, etc.

J'aurais reçu,
 tu aurais reçu,
 il aurait reçu,
 nous aurions reçu,
 vous auriez reçu,
 ils auraient reçu.

IMPERATIVE.

Reçois,	<i>Receive (thou).</i>
qu'il reçoive,	<i>let him receive.</i>
recevons,	<i>let us receive.</i>
recevez,	<i>receive (you).</i>
qu'ils reçoivent,	<i>let them receive.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may receive, etc.

Que je reçoive,
 que tu reçoives,
 qu'il reçoive,
 que nous recevions,
 qu vous receviez,
 qu'ils reçoivent.

PAST.

That I may have received, etc.

Que j'aie reçu,
 que tu aies reçu,
 qu'il ait reçu,
 que nous ayons reçu,
 que vous ayez reçu,
 qu'ils aient reçu.

IMPERFECT.

That I might receive, etc.

Que je reçusse,
 que tu reçusses,
 qu'il reçût,
 que nous reçussions,
 que vous reçussiez,
 qu'ils reçussent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have received, etc.

Que j'eusse reçu.
 que tu eusses reçu,
 qu'il eût reçu,
 que nous eussions reçu,
 que vous eussiez reçu,
 qu'ils eussent reçu.

146. Verbs in *avoir* only are conjugated like *recevoir*; all others ending in *oir*, like *vouloir*, *savoir*, etc., are irregular.

147. In all verbs of the third conjugation the *c* of the radical takes a cedilla whenever it is followed by *o* or *u*; as, *je reçois*, *je reçus*, *j'aperçois*, etc.

Conjugate like *recevoir*—

<i>apercevoir</i> , . . . to perceive.	|	<i>devoir</i> , ¹ . . . to owe.
<i>concevoir</i> , . . . „ conceive.	|	<i>redevoir</i> , ¹ . . . „ owe still.
<i>décevoir</i> , . . . „ deceive.	|	<i>percevoir</i> , . . . „ collect (taxes).

VERBS WITH A REGIMEN.

<i>recevoir des visites</i> ,	. . .	to receive visits.
<i>apercevoir un lièvre</i> ,	. . .	„ perceive a hare.
<i>concevoir un projet</i> ,	. . .	„ conceive a project.
<i>décevoir quelqu'un</i> ,	. . .	„ deceive somebody.
<i>devoir du respect</i> ,	. . .	„ owe respect.
<i>redevoir une somme</i> ,	. . .	„ owe still a sum.
<i>percevoir les impôts</i> ,	. . .	„ collect taxes.

EXERCISES ON THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE L.

A deceived hope. I now perceive the motive. Thou owest
espérance (f) *maintenant* *motif* (m)
 him respect. You (were collecting) the taxes. She received a letter
 — (m)
 yesterday. You have received (there) a beautiful present. He would
hier *là* *beau cadeau* (m)
 receive your advice with gratitude. We shall soon perceive the
avis (m) *reconnaissance* (f) *bientôt*
 tower of the castle. Receive my thanks. Let us receive him
tour (f) *château* (m) *remerciment* (m)
 with kindness. It is possible (they owe) more than they possess.
bonté (f) (subj. pres.) (ne) *posséder*

EXERCISE LI.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. L'espoir déçu est inconsolable. 2. Beaucoup de personnes ont dû leurs vertus à la nature et leurs défauts à l'éducation. 3. On doit au christianisme l'idée des plus belles vertus. 4. Les Proconsuls percevaient

¹ *Devoir* and *redevoir* take a circumflex accent on the *u* of the participle past masculine; as, *dû*, *redû*; but not in the feminine or plural, *due*, *dus*, *dues*.

les impôts des provinces. 5. Ce furent les frères Montgolfier qui les premiers conçurent l'idée de construire un ballon. 6. Les Hollandais aperçurent la Nouvelle-Hollande en 1605.

QUESTIONNAIRE.

1. *Qu'est-ce qui est inconsolable?* 2. *A quoi beaucoup de personnes doivent-elles leurs vertus et leurs défauts?* 3. *A quelle religion doit on l'idée des plus belles vertus?* 4. *Que faisaient les Proconsuls?* 5. *Qui conçut le premier l'idée de construire un ballon?* 6. *En quelle année les Hollandais aperçurent-ils la Nouvelle-Hollande?*

EXERCISE LII.

To Galileo is due the invention of the telescope, without which
Galilée dev— (f) (m) sans
 we (could not) perceive the satellites of Jupiter. I have conceived a
ne saurions
 project which must be welcome to you. If we ascended that hill,
projet(m) doit bien accueilli de montions colline(f)
 we should perceive the sea. Stay with them until they receive
mer(f) Restez jusqu'à ce qu' (subj. pr.)
 assistance. Let us conceive the importance of our duties. When I
secours(m) (f) devoir(m) Quand
 perceive him, I will give you a sign. We must not trust too much to
 (future) *ferai * signe Il ne faut pas trop se fier*
 appearances, they often deceive us. A commander ought to
 (art.) *apparence(f) souvent trompent capitaine dev—*
 be intrepid in the midst of dangers. It is impossible for a
intrépide au milieu (art.)
 prejudiced mind (to perceive) things in their true light.
prévenu (subj. pres.) choses dans vrai jour(m.)

FOURTH CONJUGATION, IN *RE*.

VENDRE, *to sell.*

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Vendre, *to sell.*

Avoir vendu, *to have sold.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Vendant, *selling.*

Vendu, *ayant vendu, sold, having sold.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I sell, etc.
 Je vends,
 tu vends,
 il vend,
 nous vendons,
 vous vendez,
 ils vendent.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

I have sold, etc.
 J'ai vendu,
 tu as vendu,
 il a vendu,
 nous avons vendu,
 vous avez vendu,
 ils ont vendu.

IMPERFECT.

I was selling, etc.
 Je vendais,
 tu vendais,
 il vendait,
 nous vendions,
 vous vendiez,
 ils vendaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had sold, etc.
 J'avais vendu,
 tu avais vendu,
 il avait vendu,
 nous avions vendu,
 vous aviez vendu,
 ils avaient vendu.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

I sold, etc.
 Je vendis,
 tu vendis,
 il vendit,
 nous vendîmes,
 vous vendîtes,
 ils vendirent.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

I had sold, etc.
 J'eus vendu,
 tu eus vendu,
 il eut vendu,
 nous eûmes vendu,
 vous eûtes vendu,
 ils eurent vendu.

FUTURE.

I will or shall sell, etc.
 Je vendrai,
 tu vendras,
 il vendra,
 nous vendrons,
 vous vendrez,
 ils vendront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I will or shall have sold, etc.
 J'aurai vendu,
 tu auras vendu,
 il aura vendu,
 nous aurons vendu,
 vous aurez vendu,
 ils auront vendu.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

I would or should sell, etc.

Je vendrais,
tu vendrais,
il vendrait,
nous vendrions,
vous vendriez,
ils vendraient.

PAST.

I would or should have sold, etc.

J'aurais vendu,
tu aurais vendu,
il aurait vendu,
nous aurions vendu,
vous auriez vendu,
ils auraient vendu.

IMPERATIVE.

Vends,
qu'il vende,
vendons,
vendez,
qu'ils vendent.

*Sell (thou).
let him sell.
let us sell.
sell (you).
let them sell.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may sell, etc.

Que je vende,
que tu vendes,
qu'il vende,
que nous vendions,
que vous vendiez,
qu'ils vendent.

PAST.

That I may have sold, etc.

Que j'aie vendu,
qu tu aies vendu,
qu'il ait vendu,
que nous ayons vendu,
que vous ayez vendu,
qu'ils aient vendu.

IMPERFECT.

That I might sell, etc.

Que je vendisse,
que tu vendisses,
qu'il vendît,
que nous vendissions,
que vous vendissiez,
qu'ils vendissent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have sold, etc.

Que j'eusse vendu,
que tu eusses vendu
qu'il eût vendu,
que nous eussions vendu,
que vous eussiez vendu,
qu'ils eussent vendu.

Conjugate in the same manner—

attendre, . . . to expect, wait for.
correspondre, ,, correspond.
entendre, . . . ,, hear.
fondre, . . . ,, melt.
pendre, . . . ,, hang.

perdre, to lose.
répondre, ,, answer.
suspendre, ,, suspend.
rompre, ,, break.
tordre, ,, twist.

Primitive Tenses.	Derivative Tenses.
PARTICIPLE PRESENT,	{ Plural of the Indicative Present. ¹ Imperfect of the Indicative. Present Subjunctive. ²
PARTICIPLE PAST,	All the Compound Tenses.
PRESENT INDICATIVE,	{ Imperative (the same as the Indica- tive without the Pronouns).
PRETERITE DEFINITE,	Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Important Observation.—*When the derivative tenses of a verb are formed regularly from its primitive tenses, it is quite sufficient to give these primitive tenses; the pupil will have no difficulty in forming the whole conjugation.*

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

193. The only Irregular Verbs of this conjugation are *aller*, to go; *s'en aller*, to go away; *envoyer*, to send; and *renvoyer*, to send back.

ALLER, TO GO.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Aller, to go.

Etre allé, to have gone.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Allant, going.

Allé, gone.

¹ Verbs of the third conjugation form the third person plural of the present indicative from the first person of same tense, by changing *s* into *vent*; as, *je reçois*, *ils reçoivent*.

² Verbs of the third conjugation form only the first and second person plural from the participles present; as, *recevant*, *que nous recevions*, *que vous receviez*. The others are formed from the first person singular of the indicative present by changing *s* into *ve*, etc.; thus, *je reçois*, *que je reçoive*, *que tu reçoives*, etc.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I go, etc.

Je vais,
tu vas,
il va,
nous allons,
vous allez,
ils vont.

IMPERFECT.

I was going, etc.

J'allais,
tu allais,
il allait,
nous allions,
vous alliez,
ils allaient.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

I had gone, etc.

J'allai,
tu allas,
il alla,
nous allâmes,
vous allâtes,
ils allèrent.

FUTURE.

I will or shall go, etc.

J'irai,
tu iras,
il ira,
nous irons,
vous irez,
ils iront.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

I have gone, etc.

Je suis allé,
tu es allé,
il est allé,
nous sommes allés,
vous êtes allés,
ils sont allés.

PLUPERFECT.

I had gone, etc.

J'étais allé,
tu étais allé,
il était allé,
nous étions allés,
vous étiez allés,
ils étaient allés.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

I had gone, etc.

Je fus allé,
tu fus allé,
il fut allé,
nous fûmes allés,
vous fûtes allés,
ils furent allés.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I will or shall have gone, etc.

Je serai allé,
tu seras allé,
il sera allé,
nous serons allés,
vous serez allés,
ils seront allés.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST.

I would or should go, etc. I would or should have gone, etc.

J'irais,
tu irais,
il irait,
nous irions,
vous iriez,
ils iraient.

Je serais allé,
tu serais allé,
il serait allé,
nous serions allés,
vous seriez allés,
ils seraient allés.

IMPERATIVE.

Va,
qu'il aille,
allons,
allez,
qu'ils aillent.

*Go (thou).
let him go.
let us go.
go (you).
let them go.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

That I may go, etc.
Que j'aille,
que tu ailles,
qu'il aille,
que nous allions,
que vous alliez,
qu'ils aillent.

That I may have gone, etc.
Que je sois allé,
que tu sois allé,
qu'il soit allé,
que nous soyons allés,
que vous soyez allés,
qu'ils soient allés.

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might go, etc.
Que j'allasse,
que tu allasses,
qu'il allât,
que nous allussions,
que vous allassiez,
qu'ils allassent.

That I might have gone, etc.
Que je fusse allé,
que tu fusses allé,
qu'il fût allé,
que nous fussions allés,
que vous fussiez allés,
qu'ils fussent allés.

194. *Aller* is conjugated with *être* in its compound tenses; as, *je suis allé, j'étais allé, etc.*

195. The imperative *va* takes an *s* before *en* and *y*; thus, *vas-y; vas-en chercher*.

S'EN ALLER, TO GO AWAY.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

S'en aller, To go away. S'en être allé, to have gone away.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

S'en allant, going away. S'en allé, gone away.

COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

S'en étant allé, having gone away.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

I go or am going away, etc.

I have gone away, etc.

Je m'en vais,

Je m'en suis allé,

tu t'en vas,

tu t'en es allé,

il s'en va,

il s'en est allé,

nous nous en allons,

nous nous en sommes allés,

vous vous en allez,

vous vous en êtes allés,

ils s'en vont.

ils s'en sont allés.

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

I was going away, etc.

I had gone away, etc.

Je m'en allais.

Je m'en étais allé.

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

I went away, etc.

I had gone away, etc.

Je m'en allai.

Je m'en fus allé.

FUTURE.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall go away, etc.

I shall have gone away, etc.

Je m'en irai.

Je m'en serai allé.

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

PAST.

I would or should go away, etc. I should have gone away, etc.

Je m'en irais.

Je m'en serais allé.

IMPERATIVE.

Va-t'en,

Go (thou) away.

qu'il s'en aille,

let him go away.

allons-nous-en,

let us go away.

allez-vous-en,

go away (you).

qu'ils s'en aillent.

let them go away.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

PRETERITE.

That I may go away, etc. That I may have gone away, etc.

Que je m'en aille,

Que je m'en sois allé.

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might go away, etc. That I might have gone away, etc.

Que je m'en allasse.

Que je m'en fusse allé.

196. *Envoyer*, to send, and *renvoyer*, to send back, are regular, except in the future and conditional, which make *j'enverrai*, *j'enverrais*, *je renverrai*, *je renverrais*, instead of *j'envoierai*, etc.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE IRREGULAR
VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION, *ALLER*, *S'EN
ALLER*, AND *ENVOYER*.

EXERCISE LXXI.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Où allez-vous? Je vais chez le libraire. 2. Quand irez-vous à la campagne? Nous irons à la campagne le mois prochain. 3. Allons faire un tour de promenade, le temps est superbe. 4. Où êtes-vous allés hier soir? Nous sommes allés au concert. 5. Il faut que j'aille à la poste. 6. Vous en allez-vous déjà? Non, mais je vais bientôt m'en aller. 7. Ne nous en allons pas encore. 8. Elle s'en est allée. 9. Pourquoi ne vous en êtes-vous pas allés? Il nous a été impossible de nous en aller plus tôt.

1. La paresse va si lentement que la pauvreté ne tarde pas à l'attraper.
2. Lafontaine composa lui-même son épitaphe, qui commençait par ces deux vers :

Jean s'en alla comme il était venu
Mangeant son fonds avec son revenu ; etc.

3. Quand on est malade, on doit aller au médecin ; il y va de la santé.
4. Le chat et le rat n'iront jamais ensemble.

EXERCISE LXXII.

Where shall we go? Let us go (home). We shall go and see the
Où *chez nous* ** voir*
 review. (Are you fond of) riding? I take a ride (I ride) as often
revue(f) *Aimez-vous* *aussi souvent*
 as I can. Go for the doctor. Let us go away. We must go away.
que possible *Chercher médecin*
 My brother is going away (next week). We shall be going away
le semaine prochaine
 (in a few days). Must I go away? Let the boys go away. He has
dans peu de jours *Laissez enfant*
 gone (to meet) his friend. She has sent some money to that poor
à la rencontre de
 family. I shall send my son to college next year.
famille(f) (art.) — (m) *prochain* (art.) *année(f)*

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACQUERIR, TO ACQUIRE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Acquérir.	Acquérant.	Acquis.

INDIC. <i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>
J'acquiens, tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquièrent.	J'acquerais, tu acquerais, il acquerait, nous acquérions, vous acquériez, ils acqueraient.

Pret. Definite.

J'acquis,
tu acquis,
il acquit,
nous acquîmes,
vous acquîtes,
ils acquirent.

Future.

J'acquerrai,
tu acquerras,
il acquerra,
nous acquerrons,
vous acquerrez,
ils acquerront.

COND. Present.

J'acquerrais,
tu acquerrais,
il acquerrait,
nous acquerriions,
vous acquerriez,
ils acquerraient.

IMPERATIVE.

Acquiers,
qu'il acquière,
acquérons,
acquérez,
qu'ils acquièrent.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que j'acquière,
que tu acquières,
qu'il acquière,
que nous acquérions,
que vous acquériez,
qu'ils acquièrent.

Imperfect.

Que j'acquisse,
que tu acquisses,
qu'il acquît,
que nous acquisitions,
que vous acquissiez,
qu'ils acquissent.

*ASSAILLIR, TO ASSAULT.*INFIN. *Present.*

Assaillir.

PART. *Present.*

Assaillant.

PART. *Past.*

Assailli.

INDIC. *Present.*

J'assaille,
tu assailles,
il assaille,
nous assaillons,
vous assaillez,
ils assaillent.

Pret. Definite.

J'assaillis,
tu assaillis,
il assaillit,
nous assaillîmes,
vous assaillîtes,
ils assaillirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

TRESSAILLIR, *to start.*

BOUILLIR, TO BOIL.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Bouillir.	Bouillant.	Bouilli.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je bous,
tu bous,
il bout,
nous bouillons,
vous bouillez,
ils bouillent.

Pret. Definite.

Je bouillis,
tu bouillis,
il bouillit,
nous bouillîmes,
vous bouillîtes,
ils bouillirent.

197. *N.B.*—*Bouillir* is used in the neuter sense; as, *l'eau bout*, the water boils. As an active verb it is used only in the infinitive mood with *faire*; as, *faites bouillir cette viande*, boil that meat.

Conjugate in the same manner—

rebouillir, . . to boil again. | *ébouillir*, . . to boil away.

COURIR, TO RUN.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Courir.	Courant.	Couru.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je cours,
tu cours,
il court,
nous courons,
vous courez,
ils courent.

Pret. Definite.

Je courus,
tu courus,
il courut,
nous courûmes,
vous courûtes,
ils coururent.

Imperfect.

Je courais,
tu courais,
il courait,
nous courions,
vous couriez,
ils couraient.

Future.

Je courrai,
tu courras,
il courra,
nous courrons,
vous courrez,
ils courront.

COND. *Present.*

Je courrais,
tu courrais,
il courrait,
nous courrions,
vous courriez,
ils courraient.

IMPERATIVE.

Cours,
qu'il coure,
courons,
courez,
qu'ils courent.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je coure,
que tu coures,
qu'il coure,
que nous courions,
que vous couriez,
qu'ils courent.

Imperfect.

Que je courusse,
que tu courusses,
qu'il courût,
que nous courussions,
que vous courussiez,
qu'ils courussent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>accourir</i> , to run to.	|	<i>encourir</i> , to incur.
<i>concourir</i> , „ concur.	|	<i>parcourir</i> , „ run over.
<i>discourir</i> , „ discourse.	|	<i>secourir</i> , „ succour.

CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Cueillir.	Cueillant.	Cueilli.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je cueille,
tu cueilles,
il cueille,
nous cueillons,
vous cueillez,
ils cueillent.

Imperfect.

Je cueillais,
tu cueillais,
il cueillait,
nous cueillions,
vous cueilliez,
ils cueillaient.

Pret. Definite.

Je cueillis,
tu cueillis,
il cueillit,
nous cueillîmes,
vous cueillîtes,
ils cueillirent.

Future.

Je cueillerai,
tu cueilleras,
il cueillera,
nous cueillerons,
vous cueillerez,
ils cueilleront.

COND. *Present.*

Je cueillerais,
tu cueillerais,
il cueillerait,
nous cueillerions,
vous cueilleriez,
ils cueilleraient.

IMPERATIVE.

Cueille,
qu'il cueille,
cueillons,
cueillez,
qu'ils cueillent.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je cueille,
que tu cueilles,
qu'il cueille,
que nous cueillions,
que vous cueilliez,
qu'ils cueillent.

Imperfect.

Que je cueillisse,
que tu cueillisses,
qu'il cueillît,
que nous cueillissions,
que vous cueillissiez,
qu'ils cueillissent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

accueillir, to receive, to welcome. | *recueillir*, . . . to collect.

DORMIR, TO SLEEP.INFIN. *Present.*

Dormir.

PART. *Present.*

Dormant.

PART. *Past.*

Dormi.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je dors,
tu dors,
il dort,
nous dormons,
vous dormez,
ils dorment.

Pret. Definite.

Je dormis,
tu dormis,
il dormit,
nous dormîmes,
vous dormîtes,
ils dormirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

endormir, . . . to lull asleep.
s'endormir, . . . „ fall asleep.

| *se rendormir*, . . . to fall asleep
again.

FUIR, TO FLY AWAY, TO SHUN.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Fuir.	Fuyant.	Fui.

INDIC. <i>Present.</i>	<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je fuis,	Je fuis,
tu fuis,	tu fuis,
il fuit,	il fuit,
nous fuyons,	nous fuîmes,
vous fuyez,	vous fûtes,
ils fuient.	ils fuirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

S'ENFUIR, to run away.

198. *Gésir*, to lie, is used only in the indicative present and imperfect. *Ci-gît* is used on monumental inscriptions for *Hic jacet*, here lies.

MOURIR, TO DIE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Mourir.	Mourant.	Mort.

INDIC. <i>Present.</i>	<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je meurs,	Je mourus,
tu meurs,	tu mourus,
il meurt,	il mourut,
nous mourons,	nous mourûmes,
vous mourez,	vous mourûtes,
ils meurent.	ils moururent.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Je mourais,	Je mourrai,
tu mourais,	tu mourras,
il mourait,	il mourra,
nous mourions,	nous mourrons,
vous mouriez,	vous mourrez,
ils mouraient.	ils mourront.

COND. *Present.*

Je mourrais,
tu mourrais,
il mourrait,
nous mourrions,
vous mourriez,
ils mourraient.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je meure,
que tu meures,
qu'il meure,
que nous mourions,
que vous mouriez,
qu'ils meurent.

IMPERATIVE.

Meurs,
qu'il meure,
mourons,
mourez,
qu'ils meurent.

Imperfect.

Que je mourusse,
que tu mourusses,
qu'il mourût,
que nous mourussions,
que vous mourussiez,
qu'ils mourussent.

199. *Mourir* is conjugated with the auxiliary *être* in its compound tenses. The double *r* of the Future and Conditional must be sounded strongly.

200. When this verb takes the reflective form, *se mourir*, it means *to be at the point of death*; but, in this sense, it is seldom used except in the present and imperfect of the Indicative.—(ACAD.)

OUVRIR, TO OPEN.

INFIN. *Present.*

Ouvrir.

PART. *Present.*

Ouvrant.

PART. *Past.*

Ouvert.

INDIC. *Present.*

J'ouvre,
tu ouvres,
il ouvre,
nous ouvrons,
vous ouvrez,
ils ouvrent.

Pret. Definite.

J'ouvris,
tu ouvris
il ouvrit,
nous ouvrîmes,
vous ouvrîtes,
ils ouvrèrent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>couvrir</i> , . . . to cover.	|	<i>recouvrir</i> , . . . to cover again.
<i>découvrir</i> , ,, discover, to uncover.	|	<i>rouvrir</i> , . . . ,, open again.
<i>offrir</i> , . . . ,, offer.	|	<i>souffrir</i> , . . . ,, suffer.

PARTIR, TO DEPART, TO SET OUT.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Partir.	Partant.	Parti.

INDIC. <i>Present.</i>	<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je pars,	Je partis,
tu pars,	tu partis,
il part,	il partit,
nous partons,	nous partîmes,
vous partez,	vous partîtes,
ils partent.	ils partirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

REPARTIR, *to go back, to reply.*

201. *Note.*—*Répartir* (with an accent), to divide, is conjugated like *finir*.

SENTIR, TO FEEL, TO SMELL.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Sentir.	Sentant.	Senti.

INDIC. <i>Present.</i>	<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je sens,	Je sentis,
tu sens,	tu sentis,
il sent,	il sentit,
nous sentons,	nous sentîmes,
vous sentez,	vous sentîtes,
ils sentent.	ils sentirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>consentir</i> , to consent.	|	<i>ressentir</i> , to resent.
<i>mentir</i> , „ lie.	|	<i>se repentir</i> , „ repent.
<i>pressentir</i> , „ foresee, literally, to forefeel.	|	etc. etc.

SERVIR, TO SERVE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Servir.	Servant.	Servi.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je sers,		Je servis,
tu sers,		tu servis,
il sert,		il servit,
nous servons,		nous servîmes,
vous servez,		vous servîtes,
ils servent.		ils servirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

DESSERVIR, to clear the table.

202. *Note.*—*Asservir*, to enslave, is conjugated like *finir*.

SORTIR, TO GO OUT.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Sortir.	Sortant.	Sorti.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je sors,		Je sortis,
tu sors,		tu sortis,
il sort,		il sortit,
nous sortons,		nous sortîmes,
vous sortez,		vous sortîtes,
ils sortent.		ils sortirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

RESSORTIR, to go out again.

TENIR, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

INFIN. *Present.* PART. *Present.* PART. *Past.*

Tenir. Tenant. Tenu.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je tiens,
tu tiens,
il tient,
nous tenons,
vous tenez,
ils tiennent.

COND. *Present.*

Je tiendrais,
tu tiendrais,
il tiendrait,
nous tiendrions,
vous tiendriez,
ils tiendraient.

Imperfect.

Je tenais,
tu tenais,
il tenait,
nous tenions,
vous teniez,
ils tenaient.

IMPERATIVE.

tiens,
qu'il tienne,
tenons,
tenez,
qu'ils tiennent.

Preter. Definite.

Je tins,
tu tins,
il tint,
nous tînmes,
vous tîntes,
ils tinrent.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je tienne,
que tu tiennes,
qu'il tienne,
que nous tenions,
que vous teniez,
qu'ils tiennent.

Future.

Je tiendrai,
tu tiendras,
il tiendra,
nous tiendrons,
vous tiendrez,
ils tiendront.

Imperfect.

Que je tinsse,
que tu tinsses,
qu'il tînt,
que nous tinssions,
que vous tinssiez,
qu'ils tinssent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>s'abstenir</i> , . . . to abstain.	<i>maintenir</i> , . . . to hold.
<i>appartenir</i> , . . . „ belong.	<i>obtenir</i> , . . . „ obtain.
<i>contenir</i> , . . . „ contain.	<i>retenir</i> , . . . „ retain.
<i>entretenir</i> , . . . „ converse.	<i>soutenir</i> , . . . „ sustain.

VENIR, TO COME.

<i>INFIN. Present.</i>	<i>PART. Present.</i>	<i>PART. Past.</i>
Venir.	Venant.	Venu.
<i>INDIC. Present.</i>		<i>COND. Present.</i>
Je viens,		Je viendrais,
tu viens,		tu viendrais,
il vient,		il viendrait,
nous venons,		nous viendrions,
vous venez,		vous viendriez,
ils viennent.		ils viendraient.
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>IMPERATIVE.</i>
Je venais,		viens,
tu venais,		qu'il vienne,
il venait,		venons,
nous venions,		venez,
vous veniez,		qu'ils viennent.
ils venaient.		
<i>Pret. Definite.</i>		<i>SUBJ. Present.</i>
Je vins,		Que je vienne,
tu vins,		que tu viennes,
il vint,		qu'il vienne,
nous vînmes,		que nous venions,
vous vîntes,		que vous veniez,
ils vinrent.		qu'il viennent.
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>
Je viendrai,		Que je vinsse,
tu viendras,		que tu vinsses,
il viendra,		qu'il vînt,
nous viendrons,		que nous vinssions,
vous viendrez,		que vous vinssiez,
ils viendront.		qu'ils vinssent.

203. *Venir* is conjugated like *tenir*; but with this difference, that in its compound tenses it always takes the auxiliary *être*.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>convenir</i> , . . . to agree ; to suit.	|	<i>prévenir</i> , . . . to anticipate ; to prevent.
<i>devenir</i> , . . . „ become.		<i>ser essouvenir</i> , . „ recollect.
<i>disconvenir</i> , . „ deny.		<i>revenir</i> , . . . „ come back.
<i>intervenir</i> , . . „ intervene ; to interfere.		<i>se souvenir</i> , . . „ remember.
<i>parvenir</i> , . . „ attain.		<i>subvenir</i> , . . . „ relieve.

204. *Prévenir* and *subvenir* are conjugated in their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*. *Convenir*, when it signifies *to agree*, takes *être*, but *avoir* when it signifies *to suit*.

VETIR, TO CLOTHE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Vêtir.	Vêtant.	Vêtu.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je vêts,		Je vêtis,
tu vêts,		tu vêtis,
il vêt,		il vêtit,
nous vêtons,		nous vêtîmes,
vous vêtez,		vous vêtîtes,
ils vêtent.		ils vêtirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>se vêtir</i> , . . . to dress one's-self.	|	<i>revêtir</i> , to invest.
<i>dévetir</i> , . . . to divest, to strip.		

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Les Romains conquirent la Gaule sous la conduite de Jules César 50 ans av. J. C.
2. Le vaisseau fut assailli d'une furieuse tempête ; c'était à faire tressaillir d'effroi.
3. Le sang lui bout dans les veines.
4. Où courez-vous si vite ?
5. Mes sœurs et moi nous cueillions des fleurs dans la prairie, quand on vint nous dire qu'il était mort.
6. Hâtons-nous, le temps fuit.
7. Que ce bouquet sent bon.
8. Tenez bon, qu'il ne vous échappe.
9. Ce livre m'appartient.
10. D'où vient ce Monsieur ? il vient de Londres.

1. L'Angleterre fut conquise par Guillaume de Normandie, surnommé le Conquérant. 2. La marmotte dort pendant tout l'hiver. 3. Le percement de l'isthme de Suez ouvrira à la navigation un chemin plus rapide entre l'Europe et l'Asie. 4. Le son parcourt environ 180 toises par seconde. 5. Marie Stuart, reine d'Ecosse, mourut sur l'échafaud, victime de la jalousie d'Elisabeth. 6. Les trois cents Spartiates morts aux Thermopyles immolèrent plus de deux cent mille Perses. 7. L'abeille recueille avec soin le suc des fleurs odoriférantes. 8. Les lapins sortent de leurs trous pendant la nuit.

EXERCISE LXXIV.

Translate, read, and parse—

We acquire new knowledge every day. Each one will reap the fruit of his own labour. Nocturnal birds sleep during the day. —(m) * *travail nocturne* *pendant*

My dog always sleeps at the door of my bedroom. ² *toujours* ¹ *porte (f)* *chambre à coucher*

Swallows fly away at the approach of winter. Open the windows, to (art.) *hirondelle* *approche* *hiver* *fenêtre pour*

let in the fresh air. Let us start immediately. The train *laisser entrer* *frais* —(m) *sur-le-champ* —(m)

starts at a quarter to ten. Shall I help you to some chicken? Clear the table. To whom does the house belong? It belongs to Mr. X. I hope (that) she will soon come back. What has become of them *espérer*—(1st) * *poulet*

(what are they become) ?

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

ASSEOIR, TO SET, and *S'ASSEOIR*, TO SIT DOWN.

INFIN. Present.	PART. Present.	PART. Past.
S'asseoir.	S'asseyant.	Assis.

INDIC. Present.	Imperfect.
Je m'assieds,	Je m'asseyais,
tu t'assieds,	tu t'asseyais,
il s'assied,	ils s'asseyait,
nous nous asseyons,	nous nous asseyions,
vous vous asseyez,	vous vous asseyiez,
ils s'asseient.	ils s'asseyaient.

Pret. Definite.

Je m'assis,
tu t'assis,
il s'assit,
nous nous assîmes,
vous vous assîtes,
ils s'assirent.

Future.

Je m'assiérai,
or je m'asseierai, etc.,
tu t'assiéras,
il s'assiéra,
nous nous assiérons,
vous vous assiérez,
il s'assiéront.

COND. Present.

Je m'assiérais,
or je m'asseierais, etc.,
tu t'assiérais,
il s'assiérait,
nous nous assiérions,
vous vous assiériez,
ils s'assiéraient.

IMPERATIVE.

assieds-toi,
qu'il s'asseie,
asseyons-nous,
asseyez-vous,
qu'ils s'asseient.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je m'asseie,
que tu t'asseies,
qu'il s'asseie,
que nous nous asseyions,
que vous vous asseyiez,
qu'ils s'asseient.

Imperfect.

Que je m'assisse,
que tu t'assisses,
qu'il s'assît,
que nous nous assissions,
que vous vous assissiez,
qu'ils s'assissent.

MOUVOIR, TO MOVE.

INFIN. *Present.*

Mouvoir.

PART. *Present.*

Mouvant.

PART. *Past.*

Mu.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je meus,
tu meus,
il meut,
nous mouvons,
vous mouvez,
ils meuvent.

Imperfect.

Je mouvais,
tu mouvais,
il mouvait,
nous mouvions,
vous mouviez,
ils mouvaient.

Pret. Definite.

Je mus,
tu mus,
il mut,
nous mûmes,
vous mîtes,
ils murent.

Future.

Je mouvrai,
tu mouvras,
il mouvra,
nous mouvrons,
vous mouvrez,
ils mouvront.

COND. Present.

Je mouvrais,
tu mouvrais,
il mouvrait,
nous mouvriions,
vous mouvriez,
ils mouvraient.

IMPERATIVE.

Meus,
qu'il meuve,
mouvons,
mouvez,
qu'ils meuvent.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je meuve,
que tu meuves,
qu'il meuve,
que nous mouvions,
que vous moviez,
qu'ils meuvent.

Imperfect.

Que je musse,
que tu musses,
qu'il mût,
que nous mussions,
que vous mussiez,
qu'ils mussent.

POURVOIR, TO PROVIDE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Pouvoir.	Pourvoyant.	Pourvu.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je pourvois,
tu pourvois,
il pourvoit,
nous pourvoyons,
vous pourvoyez,
ils pourvoient.

Pret. Definite.

Je pourvus,
tu pourvus,
il pourvut,
nous pourvûmes,
vous pourvûtes,
ils pourvurent.

POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE (TO CAN—*Johnson and Walker*).

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Pouvoir.	Pouvant.	Pu.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je puis, or je peux,
tu peux,
il peut,
nous pouvons,
vous pouvez,
ils peuvent.

COND. *Present.*

Je pourrais,
tu pourrais,
il pourrait,
nous pourrions,
vous pourriez,
ils pourraient.

Imperfect.

Je pouvais,
tu pouvais,
il pouvait,
nous pouvions,
vous pouviez,
ils pouvaient.

IMPERATIVE.

None.

Pret. Definite.

Je pus,
tu pus,
il put,
nous pûmes,
vous pûtes,
ils purent.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je puisse,
que tu puisses,
qu'il puisse,
que nous puissions,
que vous puissiez,
qu'ils puissent.

Future.

Je pourrai,
tu pourras,
il pourra,
nous pourrons,
vous pourrez,
ils pourront.

Imperfect.

Que je pusse,
que tu pusses,
qu'il pût,
que nous pussions,
que vous pussiez,
qu'ils pussent.

SAVOIR, TO KNOW.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Savoir.	Sachant.	Su.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je sais,
tu sais,
il sait,
nous savons,
vous savez,
ils savent.

Imperfect.

Je savais,
tu savais,
il savait,
nous savions,
vous saviez,
ils savaient.

Pret. Definite.

Je sus,
tu sus,
il sut,
nous sûmes,
vous sûtes,
ils surent.

Future.

Je saurai,
tu sauras,
il saura,
nous saurons,
vous saurez,
ils sauront.

COND. *Present.*

Je saurais,
tu saurais,
il saurait,
nous saurions,
vous sauriez,
ils sauraient.

IMPERATIVE.

sache,
qu'il sache,
sachons,
sachez,
qu'ils sachent.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je sache,
que tu saches,
qu'il sache,
que nous sachions,
que vous sachiez,
qu'ils sachent.

Imperfect.

Que je susse,
que tu susses,
qu'il sût,
que nous sussions,
que vous sussiez,
qu'ils sussent.

VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Valoir.	Valant.	Valu.

INDIC. Present.

Je vaux,
tu vaux,
il vaut,
nous valons,
vous valez,
ils valent.

Imperfect.

Je valais,
tu valais,
il valait,
nous valions,
vous valiez,
ils valaient.

Pret. Definite.

Je valus,
tu valus,
il valut,
nous valûmes,
vous valûtes,
ils valurent.

Future.

Je vaudrai,
tu vaudras,
il vaudra,
nous vaudrons,
vous vaudrez,
ils vaudront.

COND. Present.

Je vaudrais,
tu vaudrais,
il vaudrait,
nous vaudrions,
vous vaudriez,
ils vaudrient.

IMPERATIVE.

vaux,
qu'il vaille,
valons,
valez,
qu'ils vaillent.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je vaille,
que tu vailles,
qu'il vaille,
que nous valions,
que vous valiez,
qu'ils vaillent.

Imperfect.

Que je valusse,
que tu valusses,
qu'il valût,
que nous valussions,
que vous valussiez,
qu'ils valussent.

VOIR, TO SEE.INFIN. *Present.*

Voir.

PART. *Present.*

Voyant.

PART. *Past.*

Vu.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je vois,
tu vois,
il voit,
nous voyons,
vous voyez,
ils voient.

COND. *Present.*

Je verrais,
tu verrais,
il verrait,
nous verrions,
vous verriez,
ils verraient.

Imperfect.

Je voyais,
tu voyais,
il voyait,
nous voyions,
vous voyiez,
ils voyaient.

IMPERATIVE.

vois,
qu'il voie,
voyons,
voyez,
qu'ils voient.

Pret. Definite

Je vis,
tu vis,
il vit,
nous vîmes,
vous vîtes,
ils virent.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je voie,
que tu voies,
qu'il voie,
que nous voyions,
que vous voyiez,
qu'ils voient.

Future.

Je verrai,
tu verras,
il verra,
nous verrons,
vous verrez,
ils verront.

Imperfect.

Que je visse,
que tu visses,
qu'il vît,
que nous vissions,
que vous vissiez,
qu'ils vissent.

VOULOIR, TO BE WILLING, TO WISH.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Vouloir.	Voulant.	Voulu.

INDIC. Present.

Je veux,
tu veux,
il veut,
nous voulons,
vous voulez,
ils veulent.

Imperfect.

Je voulais,
tu voulais,
il voulait,
nous voulions,
vous vouliez,
ils voulaient.

Pret. Definite.

Je voulus,
tu voulus,
il voulut,
nous voulûmes,
vous voulûtes,
ils voulurent.

Future.

Je voudrai,
tu voudras,
il voudra,
nous voudrons,
vous voudrez,
ils voudront.

COND. Present.

Je voudrais,
tu voudrais,
il voudrait,
nous voudrions,
vous voudriez,
ils voudraient.

IMPERATIVE.

Veillez, { The second pers.
pl. is the only
one used, and
signifies *be so
good as, be so
kind as to.*

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je veuille,
que tu veuilles,
qu'il veuille,
que nous voulions,
que vous vouliez,
qu'ils veuillent.

Imperfect.

Que je voulusse,
que tu voulusses,
qu'il voulût,
que nous voulussions,
que vous voulussiez,
qu'ils voulussent.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE IRREGULAR
VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LXXV.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Messieurs, veuillez vous asseoir. 2. Elle s'assit près de moi. 3. Le mécanisme qui meut une montre est très-ingénieur et très-simple. 4. Ce colonel va être promu au grade de général. 5. Je n'y puis rien. 6. Pourriez-vous m'expliquer cela? 7. Savez-vous ce que vaut le sucre? Il vaut un franc la livre. 8. Si vous voyez Monsieur X. veuillez lui donner mes compliments. 9. Que veut-on de nous?

1. Marius, assis sur les ruines de Carthage, ne put retenir ses larmes. 2. Si jeunesse savait et vieillesse pouvait, comme le monde marcherait. 3. Un tiens vaut mieux que deux *tu l'auras*. 4. Ne peut pas toujours qui veut. 5. La nature en nous donnant deux oreilles et une seule bouche a voulu nous faire voir que nous devons plus écouter que parler. 6. La tortue se meut lentement.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

Shall we sit down here? I wish (that) you would sit down
ici (cond. pr.) (subjunct. pr.)
near me. His speech moved the whole audience. Cardinal
près de discours (m) *auditoire* (m) (art.) —
Mezzofanti knew above thirty languages. An indiscreet person
— *plus de langue* (f)
(is like) an unsealed letter; any one can (read) it.
resembl—(1st) à décachet—(1st) lettre (f) *chacun lire*
Health is (worth) better than riches. A mighty hand has marked
santé richesse puissant main (f) *marqué*
to the sea the bound which she must respect for ever.
mer (f) *borne—(pl) dev—(3d) respect—(1st) à jamais*
One ounce of gold (is equivalent to) fifteen ounces of silver. He wished
once (f) *or val— onces argent* (cond.pr.)
me to travel (that I should travel) with him during the (summer
voyag—(1st) avec pendant vacances
holidays), and I should like (wish) to accompany him.
d'été voul— accompagn—(1st)

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH
CONJUGATION.

ABSOUUDRE, TO ABSOLVE.

<i>INFIN. Present.</i>	<i>PART. Present.</i>	<i>PART. Present.</i>
Absouudre.	Absolvant.	Absous (m), Absoute (f).

INDIC. Present.
 J'absous,
 tu absous,
 il absout,
 nous absolvons,
 vous absolvez,
 ils absolvent.

COND. Present.
 J'absoudrais,
 tu absoudrais,
 il absoudrait,
 nous absoudrions,
 vous absoudriez,
 ils absoudraient.

Imperfect.
 J'absolvais,
 tu absolvais,
 il absolvait,
 nous absolvions,
 vous absolviez,
 ils absolvaient.

IMPERATIVE.
 absous,
 qu'il absolve,
 absolvons,
 absolvez,
 qu'ils absolvent.

(No *Pret. Definite.*)

Future.
 J'absoudrai,
 tu absoudras,
 il absoudra,
 nous absoudrons,
 vous absoudrez,
 ils absoudront.

SUBJ. Present.
 Que j'absolve,
 que tu absolves,
 qu'il absolve,
 que nous absolvions,
 que vous absolviez,
 qu'ils absolvent.

(No *Imperfect* of the *SUBJ.*)

BATTRE, TO BEAT.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Battre.	Battant.	Battu.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je bats,	Je battis,	
tu bats,	tu battis,	
il bat,	il battit,	
nous battons,	nous battîmes,	
vous battez,	vous battîtes,	
ils battent.	ils battirent.	

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>abattre</i> , . . . to pull down.	|	<i>rebattre</i> , . . . to beat again.
<i>combattre</i> , . . . „ fight.	|	<i>se débattre</i> , . . . „ struggle.
<i>débattre</i> , . . . „ debate.	|	<i>se battre</i> , . . . „ fight.
<i>rabattre</i> , . . . „ abate.		

BOIRE, TO DRINK.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Boire.	Buvant.	Bu.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je bois,	Je bus,	
tu bois,	tu bus,	
il boit,	il but,	
nous buvons,	nous bûmes,	
vous buvez,	vous bûtes,	
ils boivent.	ils burent.	
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Future.</i>
Je buvais,	Je boirai,	
tu buvais,	tu boiras,	
il buvait,	il boira,	
nous buvions,	nous boirons,	
vous buviez,	vous boirez,	
ils buvaient.	ils boiront.	

COND. Present.

Je boirais,
tu boirais,
il boirait,
nous boirions,
vous boiriez,
ils boiraient.

IMPERATIVE.

Bois,
qu'il boive,
buvons,
buvez,
qu'ils boivent.

SUBJ. Present.

Que je boive,
que tu boives,
qu'il boive,
que nous buvions,
que vous buviez,
qu'ils boivent.

Imperfect.

Que je busse,
que tu busses,
qu'il bât,
que nous bussions,
que vous bussiez,
qu'il bussent.

CONCLURE, TO CONCLUDE.

<i>INFIN. Present</i>	<i>PART. Present.</i>	<i>PART. Past.</i>
Conclure.	Concluant.	Conclu.
<i>INDIC. Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je conclus,		Je conclus,
tu conclus,		tu conclus,
il conclut,		il conclut,
nous concluons,		nous conclûmes,
vous concluez,		vous conclûtes,
ils concluent.		ils conclurent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

*EXCLURE, to exclude.**CONDUIRE, TO CONDUCT.*

<i>INFIN. Present.</i>	<i>PART. Present.</i>	<i>PART. Past.</i>
Conduire.	Conduisant.	Conduit.
<i>INDIC. Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je conduis,		Je conduisis,
tu conduis,		tu conduisis,
il conduit,		il conduisit,
nous conduisons,		nous conduisîmes,
vous conduisez,		vous conduisîtes,
ils conduisent.		ils conduisirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>se conduire</i> , . . .	to behave.	<i>luire</i> ,	to shine. ²
<i>construire</i> , . . .	„ construct.	<i>nuire</i> ,	„ hurt. ²
<i>cuire</i> ,	„ cook, to bake.	<i>produire</i> ,	„ produce.
<i>déduire</i> ,	„ deduct.	<i>reconduire</i> ,	„ reconduct.
<i>détruire</i> ,	„ destroy.	<i>réduire</i> ,	„ reduce.
<i>instruire</i> ,	„ instruct.	<i>traduire</i> ,	„ translate.
<i>introduire</i> ,	„ introduce. ¹		

CONFIRE, TO PRESERVE, TO PICKLE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Confire.	Confisant.	Confit.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je confis,
tu confis,
il confit,
nous confisons,
vous confisez,
ils confisent.

Pret. Definite.

Je confis,
tu confis,
il confit,
nous confîmes,
vous confîtes,
ils confirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

SUFFIRE, *to suffice*, which makes in the part. past *suffi*, without feminine.

CONNAITRE, TO KNOW, TO BE ACQUAINTED WITH.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Connaître.	Connaissant.	Connu.

INDIC. *Present.*

Je connais,
tu connais,
il connaît,
nous connaissons,
vous connaissez,
ils connaissent.

Pret. Definite.

Je connus,
tu connus,
il connut,
nous connûmes,
vous connûtes,
ils connurent.

¹ 'To introduce one person to another' is translated in French by *présenter une personne à une autre*, but never by *introduire*.

² *Luire*, *reluire*, and *nuire* make in the participle past *lui*, *relui*, and *nui*, without feminine. *Luire* has no preterite definite, no imperative, nor imperfect subjunctive.

Conjugate in the same manner—

disparaître, to disappear. | *reconnaître*, . . . to recognise.
paraître, ,, appear. | *reparaître*, . . . ,, reappear.

COUDRE, TO SEW.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Coudre.	Cousant.	Cousu.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je couds,		Je cousis,
tu couds,		tu cousis,
il coud,		il cousit,
nous cousons,		nous cousîmes,
vous cousez,		vous cousîtes,
ils cousent.		ils cousirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

découdre, to unsew. | *recoudre*, . . . to sew again.

CRAINdre, TO FEAR.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Craindre.	Craignant.	Craint.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je crains,		Je craignis,
tu crains,		tu craignis,
il craint,		il craignit,
nous craignons,		nous craignîmes,
vous craignez,		vous craignîtes,
ils craignent.		ils craignirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

plaindre, to pity. | *peindre*, to paint.
joindre, ,, join. | And all verbs in *indre*.

CROIRE, TO BELIEVE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Croire.	Croyant.	Cru.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je crois,		Je crus,
tu crois,		tu crus,
il croit,		il crut,
nous croyons,		nous crûmes,
vous croyez,		vous crûtes,
ils croient.		ils crurent.

CROITRE, TO GROW.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Croître.	Croissant.	Crû.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>	<i>Pret. Definite.</i>	
Je crois,	Je crûs,	
tu crois,	tu crûs,	
il croît,	il crût,	
nous croissons,	nous crûmes,	
vous croissez,	vous crûtes,	
ils croissent.	ils crûrent.	

Conjugate in the same manner—

accroître, to increase. } whose part. past *accru* and *décru*
décroître, „ decrease. } take no circumflex accent.

DIRE, TO SAY, TO TELL.¹

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Dire.	Disant.	Dit.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>	<i>Pret. Definite.</i>	
Je dis,	Je dis,	
tu dis,	tu dis,	
il dit,	il dit,	
nous disons,	nous dûmes,	
vous dites,	vous dîtes,	
ils disent.	ils dirent.	

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>contredire</i> , . . . to contradict.	|	<i>médire</i> , . . . to slander.
<i>dédire</i> , . . . „ disown.	|	<i>prédire</i> , . . „ foretell.
<i>interdire</i> , . . . „ prohibit.	|	<i>redire</i> , . . . „ say again. ¹

205. *Note.*—*Maudire*, to curse, is conjugated like *dire*, except that it takes double *s* in the part. present, indic. imperfect, and subj. present; *maudissant*, *je maudissais*, etc., *que je maudisse*, etc.

¹ *Dire* and *redire* make in the second person plural present indicative, *dites* and *redites*.

ECRIRE, TO WRITE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Ecrire.	Ecrivant.	Ecrit.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
J'écris,		J'écrivis,
tu écris,		tu écrivis,
il écrit,		il écrivit,
nous écrivons,		nous écrivîmes,
vous écrivez,		vous écrivîtes,
ils écrivent.		ils écrivirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>circonscrire</i> , . . . to circumscribe.	<i>proscrire</i> , . . . to proscribe.
<i>décrire</i> , . . . ,, describe.	<i>récrire</i> , . . . ,, write again.
<i>inscrire</i> , . . . ,, inscribe.	<i>souscrire</i> , . . . ,, subscribe.
<i>prescrire</i> , . . . ,, prescribe.	<i>transcrire</i> , . . . ,, transcribe.

FAIRE, TO DO, TO MAKE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Faire.	Faisant.	Fait.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je fais,		Je fis,
tu fais,		tu fis,
il fait,		il fit,
nous faisons,		nous fîmes,
vous faites,		vous fîtes,
ils font.		ils firent.
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Future.</i>
Je faisais,		Je ferai,
tu faisais,		tu feras,
il faisait,		il fera,
nous faisons,		nous ferons,
vous faisiez,		vous ferez,
ils faisaient.		ils feront.

COND. Present.

Je ferais,
tu ferais,
il ferait,
nous ferions,
vous feriez,
ils feraient.

IMPERATIVE.

Fais,
qu'il fasse,
faisons,
faites,
qu'ils fassent.

SUBJ. Present.

Que je fasse,
que tu fasses,
qu'il fasse,
que nous fassions,
que vous fassiez,
qu'ils fassent.

Imperfect.

Que je fisse,
que tu fisses,
qu'il fît,
que nous fissions,
que vous fissiez,
qu'ils fissent.

206. *Faire* followed by an infinitive is a Gallicism of Celtic origin ; it has then the meaning of *to cause to . . .*, *to order to . . .*, but generally must be translated by a different turn of phrase in English ; thus, *il le fit mettre en prison*, he ordered him to be sent to prison. *Faites relier ce livre*, have that book bound, etc.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>contrefaire</i> , . . .	to counterfeit, to mimic.	|	<i>refaire</i> , . . .	to do again.
<i>défaire</i> , . . .	„ undo, to defeat.	|	<i>satisfaire</i> , „	satisfy.
		|	<i>surfaire</i> , „	exact, to overcharge.

LIRE, TO READ.*INFIN. Present.*

Lire.

PART. Present.

Lisant.

PART. Past.

Lu.

INDIC. Present.

Je lis,
tu lis,
il lit,
nous lisons,
vous lisez,
ils lisent.

Pret. Definite.

Je lus,
tu lus,
il lut,
nous lûmes,
vous lûtes,
ils lurent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

élire, to elect. | *relire*, . . . to read again.

METTRE, TO PUT.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Mettre.	Mettant.	Mis.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je mets,		Je mis,
tu mets,		tu mis,
il met,		il mit,
nous mettons,		nous mîmes,
vous mettez,		vous mîtes,
ils mettent.		ils mirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>admettre</i> , . to admit.	<i>omettre</i> , . to omit.
<i>commettre</i> , . ,, commit.	<i>permettre</i> , ,, permit.
<i>compromettre</i> , ,, compromise.	<i>promettre</i> , ,, promise.
<i>se démettre</i> , { ,, resign, or	<i>remettre</i> , . ,, put again, to put off.
{ ,, put out of joint.	<i>soumettre</i> , ,, submit.
<i>s'entremettre</i> , ,, to intermeddle.	<i>transmettre</i> , ,, transmit.

MOUDRE, TO GRIND.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Moudre.	Moulant.	Moulu.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je mouds,		Je moulus,
tu mouds,		tu moulus,
il moud,		il moulut,
nous moulons,		nous moulûmes,
vous moulez,		vous moulûtes,
ils moulent.		ils moulurent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

émoudre, . . . to whet. | *réémoudre*, . . to whet again.
remoudre, . . . ,, grind again.

NAITRE, TO BE BORN, TO COME TO LIFE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Naître.	Naissant.	Né.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je nais,		Je naquis,
tu nais,		tu naquis,
il naît,		il naquit,
nous naissons,		nous naquîmes,
vous naissez,		vous naquîtes,
ils naissent.		ils naquirent.

207. *Note.*—Compound tenses are conjugated with *être*.

Conjugate in the same manner—

RENAÎTRE, to be born again.

PAITRE, TO GRAZE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Paître.	Paissant.	Pu (no f.)
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je pais,		
tu pais,		
il pâît,		(NONE.)
nous paissions,		
vous paisez,		
ils paissent.		

Conjugate in the same manner—

REPAÎTRE, to feed.

PLAIRE, TO PLEASE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Plaire.	Plaisant.	Plu.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je plais,		Je plus,
tu plais,		tu plus,
il plaît,		il plut,
nous plaisons,		nous plûmes,
vous plaisez,		vous plûtes,
ils plaisent.		ils plurent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

déplaire, . . . to displease. | *complaire*, . . . to humour.

PRENDRE, TO TAKE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Prendre.	Prenant.	Pris.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je prends,		Je pris,
tu prends,		tu pris,
il prend,		il prit,
nous prenons,		nous prîmes,
vous prenez,		vous prîtes,
ils prennent.		ils prirent.

208. *Note.*—Double the *n* in *prendre* and its derivatives before *e* mute ; *que je prenne, que tu prennes*, etc.

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>apprendre</i> , . to learn.	|	<i>se méprendre</i> , to mistake.
<i>comprendre</i> , ,, understand, to comprehend.		<i>reprendre</i> , . ,, take back, to reply, to censure.
<i>désapprendre</i> , ,, unlearn, to forget.		<i>surprendre</i> , ,, surprise.
<i>entreprendre</i> , ,, undertake.		

RESOUDRE, TO RESOLVE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Résoudre.	Résolvant.	Résolu or Résous (m.) Résoute (f.)
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je résous,		Je résolu,
tu résous,		tu résolu,
il résout,		il résolut,
nous résolvons,		nous résolûmes,
vous résolvez,		vous résolûtes,
ils résolvent.		ils résolurent.

209. *Note.*—When *résoudre* signifies to determine, to decide, the part. past, *résolu* (m.), *résolue* (f.), is to be employed; but if it mean to change, to reduce, or turn one thing into another, then the participle *résous* (without feminine) is to be used :—

<i>Nos soldats ont résolu de vaincre ou de mourir.</i>	|	Our soldiers have <i>resolved</i> to conquer or die.
<i>J'ai résous un schelling dans du mercure.</i>		I have <i>dissolved</i> a shilling in mercury.
<i>Il a résous mes doutes.</i>		He has <i>resolved</i> my doubts.

RIRE, TO LAUGH.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Rire.	Riant.	Ri.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je ris,		Je ris,
tu ris,		tu ris,
il rit,		il rit,
nous rions,		nous rîmes,
vous riez,		vous rîtes,
ils rient.		ils rirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

se rire de to laugh at. | *sourire*, to smile.

SUIVRE, TO FOLLOW.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Suivre.	Suivant.	Suivi.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je suis,		Je suivis,
tu suis,		tu suivis,
il suit,		il suivit,
nous suivons,		nous suivîmes,
vous suivez,		vous suivîtes,
ils suivent.		ils suivirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

poursuivre, . . . to pursue. | *s'ensuivre*, to ensue, to follow.

210. *Note.*—*S'ensuivre* is used only in the third person.

TAIRE, TO CONCEAL.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Taire.	Taisant.	Tu.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je tais,		Je tus,
tu tais,		tu tus,
il tait,		il tut,
nous taisons,		nous tîmes,
vous taisez,		vous tûtes,
ils taisent.		ils turent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

SE TAIRE, to keep silent.

TRAIRE, TO MILK.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Traire.	Trayant.	Trait (m), traite (f).
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>
Je traie,		Je trayais,
tu traie,		tu trayais,
il traite,		il trayait,
nous trayons,		nous trayions,
vous trayez,		vous trayiez,
ils traient.		ils trayaient.

(No *Pret. Definite.*)

Future.

Je trairai,
tu trairas,
il traira,
nous trairons,
vous trairez,
ils trairont.

IMPERATIVE.

Trais,
qu'il traie,
trayons,
trayez,
qu'ils traient.

COND. *Present.*

Je trairais,
tu trairais,
il trairait,
nous trairions,
vous trairiez,
ils trairaient.

SUBJ. *Present.*

Que je traie,
que tu traies,
qu'il traie,
que nous trayions,
que vous trayiez,
qu'ils traient.

(No *Imperfect* of the SUBJ.)

Conjugate in the same manner—

<i>abstraire</i> , to abstract.	|	<i>rentraire</i> , . . . to darn.
<i>distraindre</i> , ,, distract, to divert.		<i>retraire</i> , . . . ,, redeem.
<i>extraire</i> , ,, extract.		<i>soustraire</i> , . . . ,, subtract.

VAINCRE, TO VANQUISH.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Vaincre.	Vainquant.	Vaincu.

INDIC. <i>Present.</i>	<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je vaincs,	Je vainquis,
tu vaincs,	tu vainquis,
il vaine,	il vainquit,
nous vainquons,	nous vainquîmes,
vous vainquez,	vous vainquîtes,
ils vainquent.	ils vainquirent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

CONVAINCRE, to convince.

VIVRE, TO LIVE.

INFIN. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Present.</i>	PART. <i>Past.</i>
Vivre.	Vivant.	Vécu.
INDIC. <i>Present.</i>		<i>Pret. Definite.</i>
Je vis,		Je vécus,
tu vis,		tu vécus,
il vit,		il vécut,
nous vivons,		nous vécûmes,
vous vivez,		vous vécûtes,
ils vivent.		ils vécurent.

Conjugate in the same manner—

revivre, to revive. | *survivre*, to survive.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE IRREGULAR
VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Elle fut absoute par les juges. 2. Nous avons résolu d'aller en France ces vacances. 3. L'ennemi a été battu. 4. Je boirai une tasse de café. 5. Buvez à sa santé. 6. Que traduisez-vous? Nous traduisons Virgile et Cicéron. 7. Voici des concombres et des oignons confits. 8. Le feu est éteint. 9. Ils croient avoir raison. 10. Ces arbres croissent à vue d'œil. 11. Que dites-vous? Je ne dis rien. 12. Vous ferez bien de lui écrire. Mettez vos points sur les *i*. 13. Où est-elle née? Elle est née en Écosse. 14. Pourquoi paraissez-vous surpris? Cela me paraît si étrange. 15. Répondez, s'il vous plaît, au lieu de rire. 16. Taisez-vous, messieurs, il n'y a plus moyen de s'entendre. 17. J'ai besoin de me distraire. 18. Il nous faut vaincre ou mourir. 19. Le roi est mort, vive le roi!

1. En confiant nos maux nous croyons les adoucir. 2. Les druides croyaient apaiser leurs dieux par des sacrifices humains. 3. La vigne ne croît pas dans les pays froids. 4. Le feu résout le bois en cendre. 5. Le trépas seul éteint l'espoir au cœur de l'homme. 6. Le bonheur naît quelquefois du malheur même. 7. Les Grecs vainquirent les Perses à Marathon, à Salamine, à Platée, et à Mycale. 8. La France a produit

beaucoup de grands hommes. 9. La boussole n'était pas connue des anciens. 10. Les fleurs éclosent au printemps. 11. Un ânier dit : Je ne suis pas ce que je suis ; car si j'étais ce que je suis, je ne serais pas ce que je suis. 12. La mémoire de Henri iv. vivra à jamais dans le cœur des Français.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

Mercury dissolves silver. In France they drink generally
 (art.) *mercure(m)* (art.) *En — on généralement*
 wine, in England they drink beer. Pliny relates that Cæsar took
vin(m) en bière(f) Pline racont—(1st) que César
 (made) above 800,000 prisoners. Can you tell me what time
plus de prisonnier (cond. pr.) heure(f)
 it is? I cannot tell (it) you; I have not my watch with me.
montre(f) sur
 Henry iv. was born at Pau. All the children who were born on the
*à — **
 same day as Sesostris were brought up with him in the court. Adam
que — élev—(1st) avec cour(f) —
 lived 930 years. Long live the Emperor! France for ever!
an

CHAPTER VI.

THE PARTICIPLE.

211. The participle is a word which partakes of the nature both of the verb and of the adjective. There are two sorts of participles, the *present* and the *past*.

212. The participle present invariably ends in *ant*; as, *aimant, finissant, recevant, rendant*. It is used after no other preposition but *en*.

213. The participle past has various terminations; as, *aimé, fini, reçu, écrit, ouvert, pris*; and is susceptible of genders and numbers.

Note.—For the agreement of participles see the rules in the, SYNTAX, p. 176.

INVARIABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER VII.

THE ADVERB.

214. The Adverb is an invariable sort of word, so called because it is generally added to a verb, which it modifies; as, *il écrit bien*, he writes well.

215. The adverb may also modify an adjective, or even another adverb; as, *elle est fort aimable*, she is very amiable; *vous marchez trop vite*, you walk too fast. Adverbs are either simple, as, *bien*, *toujours*; or compound, as, *sans cesse*, *de nouveau*, *pêle-mêle*. In the latter case they are generally termed *adverbial expressions*, in French, *locutions adverbiales*.

PLACE OF THE ADVERB.

216. Adverbs in French are generally placed *after* the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle, in compound tenses; as, *il parle souvent de vous*, he often speaks of you; *il m'a souvent parlé de vous*, he has often spoken to me of you; but adverbial expressions come last in compound tenses; as, *je l'ai fait à dessein*, I have done it on purpose.

DIFFERENT CLASSES OF ADVERBS.

I. ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION.

<i>oui</i> ,	} yes.	|	<i>volontiers</i> ,	willingly.
<i>si</i> , ¹			<i>soit</i> ,	be it so.
<i>certes</i> ,	} certainly.	|	<i>en vérité</i> ,	indeed.
<i>certainement</i> ,			<i>sans doute</i> ,	undoubtedly.
<i>vraiment</i> ,	truly.	|	<i>d'accord</i> ,	agreed.

¹ *Si* (yes) is used instead of *oui* in reply to a question in the negative form; as, *ne le connaissez vous pas? si, je le connais depuis longtemps*. Do you not know him? Yes, I have known him for a long time.

II. ADVERBS OF NEGATION AND DOUBT.

<i>non</i> ,	} no, not.	<i>nullement</i> ,	by no means.
<i>ne.....pas</i> ,		<i>point</i> or <i>pas du tout</i> ,	not at all.
<i>ne.....point</i> ,	} nor, neither.	<i>en aucune manière</i> ,	} no ways, no wise.
<i>ni</i> ,		<i>peut être</i>, . . . . .		perhaps.
<i>probablement</i> ,	probably.		

III. ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION.

<i>combien?</i>	how much, how many, how far, how long?	<i>d'où</i> ,	whence?
<i>comment?</i>	how?	<i>pourquoi?</i>	why?
<i>où?</i>	where?	<i>quand?</i>	when?

IV. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.

<i>assez</i> ,	enough.	<i>peu</i> ,	little, few.
<i>beaucoup</i> ,	much, many.	<i>plus</i> ,	more.
<i>combien</i> ,	how much, how many.	<i>tant</i> ,	} so much, so many.
<i>guère</i> ,	but little, but few.	<i>autant</i> ,	
<i>moins</i> ,	less, fewer.	<i>trop</i> ,	too much, too many.

217. *Note.*—The foregoing adverbs of quantity take the preposition *de* when followed by a noun; as, *assez de pain*, *un peu de bière*, *plus de sucre*, *plus de pommes*, etc.

V. ADVERBS OF COMPARISON.

<i>aussi</i> ,	as, too, also.	<i>pis</i> ,	worse.
<i>autant</i> ,	as much, as many.	<i>plus</i> ,	more.
<i>comme</i> ,	as, like.	<i>plutôt</i> ,	rather.
<i>d'avantage</i> ,	more.	<i>presque</i> ,	almost.
<i>mieux</i> ,	better.	<i>tellement</i> ,	so very, so.
<i>moins</i> ,	less.		

VI. ADVERBS OF ORDER, RANK, AND PLACE.

<i>premièrement</i> ,	firstly.	<i>ailleurs</i> ,	elsewhere.
<i>secondement</i> ,	secondly, etc.	<i>ici</i> ,	here.
<i>d'abord</i> ,	at first.	<i>loin</i> ,	far.
<i>après</i> ,	after.	<i>partout</i> ,	everywhere.
<i>ensuite</i> ,	afterwards.	<i>là</i> ,	there.
<i>auparavant</i> ,	before, previously.	<i>y</i> ,	there.

VII. ADVERBS OF TIME.

<i>aujourd'hui</i> , . . .	to-day.	<i>bientôt</i> ,	soon.
<i>maintenant</i> , . . .	now.	<i>désormais</i> , . . .	} henceforth
<i>à présent</i> , . . .	at present.	<i>dorénavant</i>, . . .		} hereafter.
<i>tout à l'heure</i> , . .	immediately.	<i>à l'avenir</i> , . . .	in future.
<i>autrefois</i> , . . .	formerly.	<i>longtemps</i> , . . .	long.
<i>dernièrement</i> , . .	lately.	<i>quelquefois</i> , . .	sometimes.
<i>hier</i> ,	yesterday.	<i>rarement</i> ,	seldom.
<i>avant-hier</i> , . . .	the day before yesterday.	<i>souvent</i> ,	often.
<i>depuis</i> ,	since.	<i>toujours</i> ,	always.
<i>alors</i> ,	then.	<i>jamais</i> ,	ever, never.
<i>dès lors</i> ,	from that time.	<i>encore</i> ,	still, again.
<i>aussitôt</i> ,	immediately.	<i>enfin</i> ,	at last.
<i>demain</i> ,	to-morrow.	<i>tôt</i> ,	soon.
<i>après demain</i> , . .	the day after to-morrow.	<i>tard</i> ,	late.
		<i>tout-à-coup</i> , . .	suddenly.
		<i>vite</i> ,	quickly.

VIII. ADVERBS OF MANNER AND QUALITY.

<i>autrement</i> ,	otherwise.	<i>le mieux</i> ,	best.
<i>ainsi</i> ,	thus, so.	<i>mal</i> ,	badly.
<i>presque</i> ,	almost.	<i>pis</i> ,	worse.
<i>exprès</i> ,	on purpose.	<i>le pis</i> ,	worst.
<i>merci</i> ,	thanks.	<i>peu</i> ,	little.
<i>bien</i> ,	well.	<i>moins</i> ,	less.
<i>mieux</i> ,	better.	<i>le moins</i> ,	least.

218. To this class belong all the adverbs ending in *ment* and formed from adjectives; this termination, corresponding to the English *ly*, is derived from the Latin *mente*, mind, manner; thus, *tendrement*, means, in a tender manner, tenderly; *franchement*, in a frank manner, frankly.

219. Adverbs are formed from adjectives in the following manner:—

FORMATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.

220. Most adverbs of quality are formed from adjectives by adding *ment* when the adjective ends in a vowel or *u*; as—
absolu, absolute; *absolument*, absolutely. | *poli*, polite; *poliment*, politely.
sage, wise; *sagement*, wisely. | *posé*, steady; *posément*, steadily.

221. *Note*.—(1.) The following adverbs take an *é* accented before the final *ment*, instead of the *e* mute of adjectives :—

<i>aveuglément</i> , . . .	blindly.	<i>immensément</i> , . . .	immensely.
<i>commodément</i> , . . .	commodiously.	<i>incommodément</i> , . . .	incommodiously.
<i>conformément</i> , . . .	conformably.	<i>opiniâtrément</i> , . . .	obstinately.
<i>enormément</i> , . . .	enormously.	<i>uniformément</i> , . . .	uniformly.

(2.) *Impuni*, unpunished, makes *impunément*, with impunity; *traître*, treacherous, makes *traîtreusement*, treacherously.

222. When the masculine of the adjective ends with a consonant, the adverb is formed by adding *ment* to the feminine termination; as—

<i>franc, franche, franchement</i> , . . .	frankly.
<i>heureux, heureuse, heureusement</i> , . . .	happily.
<i>naïf, naïve, naïvement</i> , . . .	candidly.

223. The six following adverbs take an *é* accented, instead of the *e* mute of the feminine, of which they are formed :—

<i>communément</i> , . . .	commonly.	<i>obscurément</i> , . . .	obscurely.
<i>confusément</i> , . . .	confusedly.	<i>précisément</i> , . . .	precisely.
<i>expressément</i> , . . .	expressly.	<i>profondément</i> , . . .	profoundly.

224. *Gentil* makes *gentiment*, prettily; in *gentil* the letter *l* is not pronounced.

225. Adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent* in the masculine, form their adverbs by changing *ant* and *ent* into *amment* and *emment*; as—

<i>constant, constamment</i> , . . .	constantly.
<i>prudent, prudemment</i> , . . .	prudently.

226. *Lent* and *présent* make *lentement*, slowly; and *présentement*, presently.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

Form adverbs from the following adjectives :—

Facile, poli, ordinaire, premier, second, cinquième, heureux, mortel, victorieux, résolu, courageux, lâche, pesant, patient, savant, sec, lourd, sot, grossier, grand, léger, lent, différent, franc, long, assidu, traître, nouveau, bas, fier, relatif, parfait, uniforme, aveugle, clair, profond, méchant, amer, vaillant, hardi, soigneux, suffisant, dernier.

227. The adverbs which admit of comparison form their degrees in the same way as the adjectives ; as, *lent, plus lentement, le plus lentement.*

228. The three adverbs, *bien, mal, peu,* form their comparative and superlative irregularly ; thus,—

<i>bien,</i>	<i>mieux,</i>	<i>le mieux,</i>
well.	better.	best.
<i>mal,</i>	<i>pis,</i>	<i>le pis,</i>
badly.	worse.	worst.
<i>peu,</i>	<i>moins,</i>	<i>le moins,</i>
little.	less.	least.

229. *Note.*—*Plus mal* often appears instead of *pis* ; it is the only form allowed before a participle past ; as, *Alfred est plus mal mis que jamais,* Alfred is worse dressed than ever.

230. Adjectives are sometimes used adverbially, as in the following examples :—

<i>parler haut,</i>	. . . . .	to speak loud.
<i>chanter juste,</i>	. . . . .	„ sing in time.
<i>frapper ferme,</i>	. . . . .	„ strike hard.
<i>sentir bon,</i>	. . . . .	„ smell nice.

LIST OF ADVERBIAL PHRASES.

<i>A bon marché,</i> cheap.	<i>A présent,</i> now.
<i>A cheval,</i> on horseback.	<i>A propos,</i> properly, seasonably.
<i>A contre cœur,</i> reluctantly.	<i>Après-demain,</i> the day after to-morrow.
<i>A dessein,</i> designedly, on purpose.	<i>A regret,</i> reluctantly.
<i>A droite,</i> on the right.	<i>Au hasard,</i> at random.
<i>A gauche,</i> on the left.	<i>Au moins,</i> at least.
<i>A fond,</i> thoroughly.	<i>Avant-hier,</i> the day before yesterday.
<i>A fleur d'eau,</i> even with the water.	<i>Bon gré mal gré,</i> willing or not.
<i>A fleur de terre,</i> close to the ground.	<i>De bon cœur,</i> willingly, heartily.
<i>A jamais,</i> for ever and ever.	<i>De bon matin,</i> early.
<i>A la fois,</i> at once.	<i>De bonne heure,</i> early.
<i>A l'endroit,</i> on the right side.	<i>De but en blanc,</i> bluntly, rashly, etc.
<i>A l'envers,</i> on the wrong side.	<i>De côté,</i> aside, sideways.
<i>A l'envi,</i> vying with one another, emulously.	<i>De côté et d'autre,</i> here and there.
<i>A peine,</i> hardly.	<i>De jour,</i> by day.
<i>A peu près,</i> nearly.	<i>D'emblée,</i> at the first outset.
<i>A pied,</i> on foot.	

<i>D'en haut</i> , from above, upper.	<i>Ici-près</i> , hereby.
<i>D'en bas</i> , from below, lower.	<i>Là-haut</i> , above.
<i>De mieux en mieux</i> , better and better.	<i>Là-bas</i> , yonder.
<i>A qui mieux mieux</i> , vying with each other.	<i>Là-dedans</i> , within.
<i>De nouveau</i> , anew.	<i>Par devant</i> , before, in front.
<i>De près</i> , closely.	<i>Par derrière</i> , behind.
<i>De suite</i> , together, successively.	<i>Par-dessus le marché</i> , into the bargain.
<i>De temps en temps</i> , now and then.	<i>Par hasard</i> , perchance.
<i>De travers</i> , across, wrong.	<i>Par malice</i> , maliciously.
<i>Dès lors</i> , from that time.	<i>Peu à peu</i> , little by little.
<i>D'ordinaire</i> , usually, mostly.	<i>Pour lors</i> , then.
<i>Du moins</i> , at least.	<i>Rien du tout</i> , nothing at all.
<i>En avant</i> , forward.	<i>Sens dessus dessous</i> , upside down.
<i>En bas</i> , down, down-stairs.	<i>Tôt ou tard</i> , sooner or later.
<i>En haut</i> , up, up-stairs.	<i>Tout à la fois</i> , all at once.
<i>En dedans</i> , within.	<i>Tout à rebours</i> , the wrong way.
<i>En dehors</i> , without.	<i>Tout à coup</i> , suddenly.
<i>En moins de rien</i> , in a trice.	<i>Tout d'un coup</i> , all at once.
<i>En plein jour</i> , in broad daylight.	<i>Tout au plus</i> , at most.
<i>En plein midi</i> , at noon-day.	<i>Tout de bon</i> , in earnest.
<i>En sursaut</i> , suddenly.	<i>Tout net</i> , flatly.
<i>En un clin d'œil</i> , in the twinkling of an eye.	<i>Tout près</i> , close by.
<i>Ici-bas</i> , here below.	<i>Tant soit peu</i> , ever so little.
	<i>Tant pis</i> , so much the worse.
	<i>Tant mieux</i> , so much the better.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE ADVERBS.

EXERCISE LXXX.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi. 2. Moins on a de désirs, plus on est satisfait. 3. Comme le temps passe vite, comme les années s'écoulent rapidement. 4. Ne remettons jamais au lendemain ce que nous pouvons faire aujourd'hui. 5. Tôt ou tard une bonne action trouve sa récompense. 6. Est-il chez lui? Je crois que oui. 7. N'avez vous pas vu votre ami aujourd'hui? Si, et nous avons fait une promenade ensemble. 8. Comment vous appelez-vous? 9. D'où venez-vous? 10. Où allez-vous? 11. De tous les oiseaux le rossignol est celui qui chante le plus agréablement. 12. César savait aussi bien manier la plume que l'épée. 13. Notre verger produit beaucoup de pommes, mais peu de poires. 14. Qui trop embrasse mal étreint.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

Are you better now? Yes, thank you. All is well that ends well.
 * *fin*—(2d)

(At) how much do you value this painting? I think (that)
 à *estim*—(1st) *tableau*(m) *croi*—(4th)

it is worth above (more than) a hundred guineas. Where are you? I
guinée(f)

am here. The lion is naturally courageous. Let us speak to everybody
 politely. Let us accustom children to reason exactly (just).
accoutum—(1st) à *raisonn*—(1st)

There are men of much wit who have little common sense. How much
esprit *bon sens*(m)

have you got in your purse? Only a few shillings. I weary
 * *bourse*(f) *schellings* *S'ennuy*—(1st)

here, let us go elsewhere. Has not your brother too much meat? He
 has not enough (of it). Read slowly and more distinctly. That young
 lady dresses very elegantly. Your brother has a good voice, but
se mett—(4th) *voix*(f)

he sings out of tune (false) and too loud. How long have you been
 learning French (since how much time do you learn French)? Swallows
 fly very high. Come and see me to-morrow. Now or never.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE PREPOSITION.

231. The Preposition is an invariable word (from the Latin *præ positus*, placed before), so called, because it is generally placed before the word which it affects. It serves to express the relation of words with one another.

232. In French, as in English, it is by means of prepositions that we supply the want of cases.

233. Prepositions are either SIMPLE; as, *à*, to; *de*, of; *par*, by; or COMPOUND, as, *quant à*, as to; *à l'égard de*, with regard to.

234. In French the preposition invariably precedes the word which it affects, although in colloquial English it

frequently comes after ; as, *de quoi parlez-vous?* what are you speaking of? *à quoi pensez-vous?* what are you thinking about?

235. *Durant* is the only exception; as, *sa vie durant*, during his life.

PREPOSITIONS MOST IN USE.

A (à) to, at, in, from, etc.
Après, after.
Avant, before.
Avec, with.
Chez, at (the house of), etc.
Contre, against.
Dans, in.
De, of, from, with, etc.
Depuis, since, from.
Derrière, behind.
Dès, from, as early as.
Devant, before, in front.
En, in, into, as, etc.
Entre, between.
Envers, towards.
Environ, about.
Excepté, except.
Hormis, except.

Malgré, in spite of.
Moyennant, by means of.
Nonobstant, notwithstanding.
Outre, besides.
Par, by, from, etc.
Parmi, among.
Pendant, during.
Pour, for, in order to.
Sans, without.
Sauf, save.
Selon, according to.
Sous, under.
Sur, on, upon.
Touchant, concerning.
Vers, about, towards.
Voici, here is.
Voilà, there is.
Vu, considering, etc.

236. The prepositions *à*, *de*, and *en* are repeated before every word they govern ; as, *je dois aller à Londres, à Paris et à Genève*, I have to go to London, Paris, and Geneva. *Nous attendons des lettres de Londres, de Paris et d'Amsterdam*, we expect letters from London, Paris, and Amsterdam. *La France est fertile en blé, en vin et en fruits*, France is fertile in corn, wine, and fruits.

237. *En* is the only preposition that governs the participle present, all the others must be followed by the infinitive. *Ex.*, *Robert a dit cela en plaisantant*, Robert said that in joking. *Charles aime à lire*, Charles is fond of reading.

PREPOSITIVE PHRASES.

<i>A cause de</i> , on account of.	<i>D'après</i> , from, according to.
<i>A côté de</i> , by the side of, beside.	<i>Dessus et dessous</i> , upon and under.
<i>A l'égard de</i> , with regard to.	<i>En deçà de</i> , on this side of.
<i>A l'exception de</i> , with the exception of.	<i>En faveur de</i> , in behalf of.
<i>A travers</i> , across, through.	<i>Jusqu'à</i> , as far as.
<i>Au delà de</i> , beyond.	<i>Loin de</i> , far from.
<i>Au-dessous de</i> , beneath.	<i>Par-dessus</i> , over.
<i>Au-dessus de</i> , above.	<i>Pour l'amour de</i> , for the sake of.
<i>Au devant de</i> , before (to meet).	<i>Près de</i> , near.
<i>Auprès de</i> , near, close by.	<i>Proche de</i> , near.
<i>Autour de</i> , around, about.	<i>Quant à</i> , as to, as for.
<i>Avant de</i> , before.	<i>Vis-à-vis de</i> , opposite.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

EXERCISE LXXXII.

1. Une heure est bien longue pour le cœur qui souffre. 2. En toute chose il faut considérer la fin. 3. Jeanne d'Arc arracha la France à la domination étrangère. 4. Nos soldats combattirent un contre dix. 5. Buvons à la santé de notre général. 6. Tout est perdu hors l'honneur. 7. Le vent souffle du Nord au Sud. 8. Où allez-vous par ce mauvais temps? 9. L'amitié est un besoin pour l'âme. 10. Un agneau se désaltérait dans le courant d'une onde pure. 11. C'est l'usage en France. 12. Avec le travail et la bonne conduite on réussit malgré ses ennemis. 13. Il ne faut pas juger des gens sur l'apparence. 14. Le jeune homme court à la mort, elle vient au devant du vieillard.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

We live in (at) the centre of the town, near to (of) the
demeur—(1st) ———(m) *ville* (f)
town-hall, almost opposite the cathedral. We are going to Paris next
mairie (f) *cathédrale*(f)
month; are you not coming with us? The Pyrenees are situated
situ—(1st)
between France and Spain. Mozart was almost from (the
(art) ——— (art) *Espagne* ——— *son*
cradle) a prodigy of musical genius. We have not received any
berceau *prodige* (m) ——— *génie* (m)
letter from George since his departure. He carried a large book
départ—(m) *port*—(1st) *gros*

under his arm. I shall be back before night. The fields are
le de retour champ (m)
 covered with (of) vines, fig-trees, olive trees, and orange trees. It was
vigne figuier olivier oranger
 the custom among the Gauls to immerse their new-born children
coutume (f) plong—(1st) nouveau-né
 in cold water (in order to) make them stronger. In prosperity
froid rend—(4th) (art) 20 (f)
 it is agreeable to have a friend, in misfortune it is a necessity.
agréable adversité (f) 20 (f)

CHAPTER IX.

THE CONJUNCTION.

238. The Conjunction is an invariable word, which serves to connect words and sentences together ; as—

<p><i>La mémoire d'Henri IV. sera toujours chère aux Français, parce qu'il mit sa gloire et son bonheur à les rendre heureux.</i></p>	<p>The memory of Henry IV. will always be dear to the French, because he placed his glory and happiness in making them happy.</p>
---	---

239. Conjunctions are either SIMPLE, as, *car, si, et*, etc. ; or COMPOUND, as, *afin que, de peur de*, etc.

240. Some conjunctions govern the *indicative*, some the *subjunctive*, and others the *infinitive*.

1.—CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE INDICATIVE.

<p><i>Ainsi que</i>, as. <i>Après que</i>, after. <i>Au lieu que</i>, whereas. <i>Aussitôt que</i>, as soon as. <i>Car</i>, for. <i>Cependant</i>, however, yet. <i>C'est pourquoi</i>, therefore. <i>Comme</i>, as, like. <i>Depuis que</i>, since. <i>De sorte que</i>, so that. <i>Dès que</i>, as soon as. <i>Donc</i>, then, therefore</p>	<p><i>Et</i>, and. <i>Enfin</i>, in short. <i>Lorsque</i>, when. <i>Mais</i>, but. <i>Néanmoins</i>, nevertheless. <i>Ni</i>, neither, nor. <i>Or</i>, now. <i>Ou bien</i>, or else. <i>Ou</i>, either...or. <i>Outre que</i>, besides. <i>Parceque</i>, because. <i>Pendant que</i>, whilst.</p>
--	--

<i>Pourquoi</i> , why, wherefore.	<i>Si</i> , if.
<i>Pourtant</i> , however.	<i>Sinon</i> , or else, if not.
<i>Puisque</i> , since.	<i>Sitôt que</i> , as soon as.
<i>Quand</i> , when.	<i>Soit</i> , either, or.
<i>Quand même</i> , though.	<i>Suivant que</i> , according as.
<i>Que</i> , that.	<i>Tandis que</i> , whilst.
<i>Savoir</i> , namely, viz.	<i>Tant que</i> , as long as.
<i>Selon que</i> , according as.	<i>Toutefois</i> , however.

2.—CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Afin que</i> , that, in order that.	<i>Loin que</i> , far from.
<i>A moins que</i> , unless.	<i>Malgré que</i> , although.
<i>Avant que</i> , before.	<i>Non pas que</i> , not that.
<i>Bien que</i> , though, although.	<i>Pour que</i> , that.
<i>De crainte que</i> , for fear.	<i>Pourvu que</i> , provided.
<i>De peur que</i> , lest.	<i>Quoique</i> , though, although.
<i>En cas que</i> , in case that.	<i>Sans que</i> , without.
<i>Encore que</i> , though.	<i>Soit que</i> , whether.
<i>Jusqu'à ce que</i> , till, until.	<i>Supposé que</i> , suppose.

3.—CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE INFINITIVE.

<i>Afin de</i> , in order to.	<i>De peur de</i> , for fear of.
<i>A moins de</i> , unless.	<i>Faute de</i> , for want of.
<i>Avant de</i> , before.	<i>Jusqu'à</i> , till.
<i>Au lieu de</i> , instead of.	<i>Loin de</i> , far from.
<i>De crainte de</i> , for fear of.	<i>Plutôt que de</i> , rather than.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON CONJUNCTIONS.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. On éprouve une douce joie à rendre service à un ami. 2. Travaille et prie si tu veux plaire à Dieu. 3. On est toujours assez riche, quand on sait se contenter de ce qu'on a. 4. C'est une qualité nécessaire à une femme que¹ la douceur. 5. Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux. 6. Ces chants sont doux, mais les tristesses et les joies qu'ils réveillent ne sont ni mes tristesses ni mes joies. 7. Patience et longueur

¹ The conjunction *que* used in this manner is peculiar to the French. It enables the subject of a phrase to come after the attribute, which acquires thus more strength from its being placed first. In translating into English, the phrase must be turned, and the subject placed first.

de temps font plus que force ni que rage. 8. La fortune soit bonne ou mauvaise ne peut rien changer dans l'âme du sage. 9. Soit que je lise ou que j'écrive j'aime à être seul. 10. Que le ciel vous protège !

EXERCISE LXXXV.

Whether you be rich or poor, you will always be dependent on
riche *pauvre* *dépend*—(4th)
 (from) some one. There is no happiness where there is no virtue. If I
 knew when he will return I would tell (it) you. I cannot go
reven—(2d) *sort*—(2d)
 out because the doctor has prohibited it. I will lend you an
médecin *defend*—(4th) *prêt*—(1st)
 interesting book, as you cannot go out. How curious you are!
intéressant *sort*—(2d)
 Do not do it, for you might repent of it. Whilst everything
pouv—(3d) *se repent*—(2d)
 changes and dies away, nature remains unchangeable.
pér—(2d) (art.) *rest*—(1st) *immuable*
 May Heaven preserve you from such a misfortune.
préserv—(1st)

CHAPTER X.

THE INTERJECTION.

241. The Interjection is an invariable word, used to express a sudden emotion of the mind.

PRINCIPAL INTERJECTIONS.

JOY,	<i>Ah! Bon! Hourra! Vivat!</i>
GRIEF AND PAIN,	<i>Hélas! Aïe! Ah! Ouf! Peste!</i>
FEAR,	<i>Ah! Hé!</i>
SURPRISE,	<i>Oh! Quoi! Vraiment!</i>
IMPLORING,	<i>Pitié! Miséricorde!</i>
AVERSION AND CONTEMPT,	<i>Fi! Fi donc! Pouah!</i>
ADMIRATION,	<i>Oh! Ah! Ciel!</i>
ENCOURAGEMENT,	<i>Allons! Voyons! Ferme! Courage! Bravo!</i>
SILENCE,	<i>Chut! Paix! St! Motus!</i>
CALLING,	<i>Holà! Hé! Ho!</i>
WARNING,	<i>Prenez garde! Attention! Gare! Alerte!</i>
DISBELIEF,	<i>Ah bah! Zest!</i>
INTERROGATION,	<i>Hé bien!</i>

EXPRESSIONS USED BY WAY OF INTERJECTION.

<i>Au secours!</i> . .	Help!	|	<i>La garde!</i> . .	} Police!
<i>Au feu!</i> . .	Fire!		<i>La police!</i> . .	
<i>Au voleur!</i> . .	Thief.	|	<i>En route!</i> . .	} Forward!
<i>Au meurtre!</i> . .	} Murder!		<i>En avant!</i> . .	
<i>A l'assassin!</i> . .			|	<i>Fort bien!</i> . .	All right!
<i>Au loup!</i> . .	A wolf!	A wolf!		etc.
<i>Aux armes!</i> . .	To arms!			

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Ha! vous voilà, c'est fort heureux. 2. Eh bien! voyons, êtes-vous prêts? 3. De grâce! laissez moi en repos. 4. Chut! ils dorment, ne les éveillez pas. 5. Ouf! je n'en puis plus. 6. Ah! que cela est bien dit. 7. Diantre! quel appétit vous avez ce matin. 8. Hein! que dit-il? 9. Silence! l'ennemi approche. 10. Bon! nous allons enfin le voir de près. 11. Par le flanc droit, en avant! marche! 12. En joue! feu! 13. Eh! qui n'a pas pleuré quelque perte cruelle. 14. O seigneur, écoutez nous. 15. Ah ciel! que deviendrons nous?

1. Hé! bonjour, Monsieur du corbeau. 2. Laquais! holà, mes deux laquais! 3. Parbleu! dit le meunier, est bien fou du cerveau qui prétend contenter tout le monde et son père. 4. Ouais! vous êtes bien obstinée, ma femme. 5. Or ça! Sire Grégoire, que gagnez-vous par an? 6. Adieu donc! fi du plaisir que la crainte peut corrompre. 8. Moi, des tauches! dit-il: moi, héron, que je fasse une si pauvre chère; et pour qui me prend-on?

MODEL OF PARSING.

MODELE D'ANALYSE GRAMMATICALE.

242. PARSING consists in analysing a phrase, that is to say, in taking each word separately, and indicating its nature, its species, the variations of gender, number, mood, tense, and person of which it is susceptible, and also in showing its various relations with the other words.

EXAMPLE.

Le lion est le roi des animaux quadrupèdes. Il en est le plus courageux et attaque même l'éléphant et le rhinocéros, qui sont plus gros que lui.

LE,	art. simple, masc. sing. détermine <i>lion</i> .
LION,	subst. com. masc. sing., sujet du verb <i>est</i> .
EST,	verb. subs. au prés. de l'ind. 3 ^{me} pers. du sing. se rapportant à <i>lion</i> ; temps primitifs, <i>être, étant, été, je suis, je fus</i> .
LE,	art. simp. m. s. détermine <i>roi</i> .
ROI,	nom com. m. s.
DES,	art. composé pour <i>de les</i> ; détermine <i>animaux</i> .
ANIMAUX, . . .	subst. com. masc. pl.
QUADRUPÈDES.	subst. com. masc. pl.; complément d' <i>animaux</i> .
IL,	pronom de la 3 ^{me} pers. du masc. sing. représentant <i>lion</i> .
EN,	pron. personnel mis pour <i>d'eux</i> ; représentant <i>animaux</i> .
EST,	verb. subst. au prés. de l'ind. 3 ^{me} pers. du sing. se rapporte à <i>il</i> .
LE,	art. simp. m. s. détermine <i>plus courageux</i> .
PLUS,	adv. de comparaison modifiant <i>courageux</i> .
COURAGEUX, . .	adj. qualificatif, m. s. se rapporte à <i>il</i> .
ET,	conjonction.
ATTAQUE, . . .	verb. act. au prés. de l'ind. 3 ^{me} pers. du sing. temps prim. <i>attaquer, attaquant, attaqué, j'attaque, j'attaquai</i> .
MÊME,	conj.
L'	art. simp. m. s. pour <i>le</i> , gouverne <i>éléphant</i> .
ÉLÉPHANT, . . .	subst. com. m. s.
ET,	conj.
LE. . . .	art. simp. m. s. gouverne <i>rhinocéros</i> .
RHINOCÉROS, . .	subs. com. m. s.
QUI,	pron. relatif, pl. m. unissant <i>éléphant</i> et <i>rhinocéros</i> à <i>sont</i> .
SONT,	verb. subst. à la 3 ^{me} pers. pl. du pr. de l'ind. etc.
PLUS,	adv. de comparaison.
GROS,	adj. qualificatif, m. s. se rapporte à <i>éléphant</i> et <i>rhinocéros</i> .
QUE,	conj.
LUI,	pron. pers. 3 ^{me} pers. s. m.; représente <i>lion</i> .

PART II.

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX is that part of grammar that gives the rules for the construction of words and sentences.

SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

243. The definite article is used in French before nouns taken in their full sense, and must be repeated before each ; as—

Necessity is the mother of invention.	|	<i>La nécessité est la mère de l'invention.</i>
I learn Latin and Greek.	|	<i>J'apprends le latin et le grec.</i>

244. The definite article is used before geographical names, excepting the names of towns ; as—

Paris is the capital of France, and London is the capital of England.	|	<i>Paris est la capitale de la France, et Londres est la capitale de l'Angleterre.</i>
---	--	--

245. Observe, however, the article is omitted — 1stly, With countries of *Europe* when preceded by verbs of motion or residence, or when qualifying a noun ; 2dly, After the preposition *en* ; as—

He comes from Italy.	|	<i>Il vient d'Italie.</i>
The queen of Spain.	|	<i>La reine d'Espagne.</i>
They live in France.	|	<i>Ils demeurent en France.</i>

246. The article is generally used in French before names of *titles, professions, dignities, etc.* ; as—

Princess Clotilde.	|	<i>La Princesse Clotilde.</i>
Marshal Canrobert.	|	<i>Le Maréchal Canrobert.</i>
Doctor Récamier.	|	<i>Le Docteur Récamier.</i>

247. The article *le, la, les*, is used for the English indefinite *a* or *an*, before nouns of *weight, measure, and number*; *a* or *an*, however, must be translated by *par* before a noun of *time*; as—

Three shillings a pound.	|	<i>Trois schellings la livre.</i>
Two francs a dozen.	|	<i>Deux francs la douzaine.</i>
A hundred pounds a year.	|	<i>Cent livres par an.</i>

SUPPRESSION OF THE ARTICLE.

248. No article is used before common nouns preceded by the words *sans, avec, entre, de, soit, par, pour, ni, sur, jamais, comme* or *en*, if the sense be vague and indeterminate; as—

A man without merit.	|	<i>Un homme sans mérite.</i>
She has neither father nor mother.	|	<i>Elle n'a ni père ni mère.</i>
He died as a hero.	|	<i>Il mourut en héros.</i>

249. The article is omitted in French in proverbial sentences, in enumerations, and before substantives used exclamationally; as—

Defence is not defiance.	|	<i>Défense n'est pas défiance.</i>
Men, women, children, all perished.	|	<i>Hommes, femmes, enfants, tout périt.</i>
Soldiers, the country relies on you.	|	<i>Soldats, la patrie compte sur vous.</i>

250. The article is omitted in French when the substantive begins the title of a book or the heading of a subject; as—

A history of France by V. Duruy.	|	<i>Histoire de France par V. Duruy.</i>
An amusing anecdote.	|	<i>Anecdote amusante.</i>

251. The article is omitted after *quel, quelle*, etc.; what, used in an exclamatory form; as—

What a story!	|	<i>Quel conte!</i>
What a beautiful morning!	|	<i>Quelle belle matinée!</i>

252. The English article *the* used before *more* or *less* is not expressed in French; as—

The less one thinks the more one speaks. Moins on pense, plus on parle.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. La guerre est un fléau.
2. Les Alpes séparent la France de l'Italie.
3. Marseille est une ville commerçante.
4. L'Empereur de Russie.

5. Nous irons en Touraine le mois prochain. 6. Connaissez-vous le professeur Wilson? 7. Les huîtres se vendent quatre schellings le cent. 8. Il reçoit trois cent livres par an. 9. Une vie pleine de charmes. 10. Cette demoiselle chante avec goût. 11. Soldats, s'écrie Bonaparte, songez que du haut de ces pyramides, quarante siècles vous contemplent. 12. Economie n'est pas avarice. 13. Dictionnaire de l'Académie Française. 14. Quel spectacle ravissant présente le lever du soleil dans les Alpes! 15. Plus on étudie plus on goûte les charmes de l'étude.

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

Man is the king of nature. The olive-tree is the emblem of peace.
olivier (m) emblème (m) paix (f)

The principal rivers of France are the Rhone, the Rhine, the Loire,
fleuve (m) — (m) Rhin (m) — (f)

the Seine, the Meuse, and the Garonne. The Emperor of Austria
— (f) — (f) — (f) Autriche (f)

generally resides in Vienna. The shawls of India are in great
resid—(1st) à Vienne châle (m) Inde

repute. General Pélistier was elected Marshal, Duke of Malakoff,
réputation (f) — — élu maréchal Duc —

at the capture of Sebastopol. Eggs sell at tenpence a dozen.
*prise (f) — œuf (m) se vend—(4th) * —*

How much do you charge a lesson? I charge ten guineas a
prend—(4th) leçon guinée (f)

quarter. Between friends there are no secrets. Let us have pity on
trimestre — — de

the poor. Friends, we shall meet again. His father is a banker.
ami se revoir

French literature by Demogeot. What a handsome woman! The
littérature (f) beau

less you spend, the more you will have.
dépens—(1st)

SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

253. As the possessive case, expressed in English by 's, does not exist in French, the ordinary construction is used (see 30, p. 11).

254. When the 's means at the house, residence, etc., it is translated in French by *chez*; as—

He is gone to Mr. Hamilton's. | *Il est allé chez M. Hamilton.*

255. Nouns having a dependence on each other are joined by the preposition *de*; as—

Printer to the Queen.	|	<i>Imprimeur de la Reine.</i>
The way to London.	|	<i>La route de Londres.</i>

256. The preposition *de* is used in compound substantives to unite the name of a thing with the name of the substance of which it is made (31, p. 11).

257. But if the qualifying noun expresses the *use* or *purpose* of the other, they must be united by the preposition *à*; as—

Fire-arms.	|	<i>Des armes à feu.</i>
A dining-room.	|	<i>Une salle à manger.</i>

258. The preposition *à* is also used when there is understood *by means of*, *with*, etc.; as—

A steam-boat.	|	<i>Un bateau à vapeur.</i>
A four-wheeled carriage.	|	<i>Une voiture à quatre roues.</i>

259. The definite article is added to the preposition *à* if the noun represents what is sold in a place, or when the first word is intended to contain the second; as—

The corn-market.	|	<i>La halle au blé.</i>
The letter-box.	|	<i>La boîte aux lettres.</i>

OF COLLECTIVE NOUNS.

260. There are two sorts of collective nouns, the *Collective General*, and the *Collective Partitive*.

261. The *Collective General* represents a whole object or collection; such as, *la nation*, *l'armée*, *la flotte*, *la famille*, etc., and requires every word relating to it to be put in the singular; as—

All the family are well.	|	<i>Toute la famille va bien.</i>
--------------------------	--	----------------------------------

262. The *Collective Partitive* represents only a portion of the object or collection; as, *une troupe*, *une multitude*, *une foule*, etc., and requires every word relating to it to be put in the plural; as—

A troop of janissaries surround him.	|	<i>Une troupe de janissaires l'entourent.</i>
--------------------------------------	--	---

NUMBER OF PROPER NAMES.

263. In French, proper names of individuals do not take the mark of the plural, unless they denote a class; thus write without the mark of the plural—

La France a eu deux Corneille, | France has had two Corneilles, two
deux Racine, et deux Rousseau. | Racines, and two Rousseaus.

But write with the mark of the plural—

La France a eu ses Césars et ses | France has had her Cæsars and her
Pompées. | Pompeys.

264. The mark of the plural is also used before names of royal families, Roman names, etc.; as, *les Bourbons, les Stuarts, les Horaces, les Gracques*, etc.

PLURAL OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

265. Compound substantives may be considered as abbreviated locutions. To write them correctly, restore the locution to its natural form, and give the mark of the plural to the substantives as required. The only variable words in compound substantives are the substantive and the adjective. Thus write—

Singular.	Plural	
<i>Chef-lieu, . . .</i>	<i>Chefs-lieux, . . .</i>	Chief residence, chief town.
<i>Ver-luisant, . . .</i>	<i>Vers-luisants, . . .</i>	Glow-worm (glowing worm).
<i>Arc-en-ciel, . . .</i>	<i>Arcs-en-ciel, . . .</i>	Rainbow (bow in heaven).
<i>Avant-coureur, . . .</i>	<i>Avant-coueurs, . . .</i>	Forerunner, harbinger.
<i>Garde-manger, . . .</i>	<i>Garde-manger, . . .</i>	Pantry, safe (for victuals).
<i>Casse-cou, . . .</i>	<i>Casse-cou, . . .</i>	Breakneck, (man)rough-rider.

Let the pupil explain the marks of the plural in the foregoing examples, according to the rule given above.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE SUBSTANTIVE.

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. L'huile d'olive de Provence est très renommée. 2. La laine d'Espagne est très-estimée. 3. L'inventeur de la poudre à canon était un moine

allemand, nommé Schwartz. 4. La flotte entière fut détruite par les tempêtes. 5. Une troupe de jeunes nymphes couronnées de fleurs nageaient derrière le char de la déesse. 6. Les Corneille, les Racine, et les Molière, ont illustré le règne de Louis XIV., non moins que les Turenne et les Condé. 7. La nature n'enfante pas tous les jours des Homères, des Virgiles, des Démosthènes, et des Cicérons. 8. Les trois Horaces combattaient pour Rome, les trois Curiaces pour Albe. 9. Les oiseaux-mouches sont de véritables petits chefs-d'œuvre. 10. Il y a en France à peu près trois cent sous-préfets. 11. Les eaux-de-vie de France sont les plus estimées.

EXERCISE XC.

A large quantity of Burgundy wine is consumed in England.
grand — 20 *Bourgogne vin* *consomm*—(1st)

She wore a silk dress and satin shoes. Let us go to the winter gardens.
avait soie robe — *soulier*

Don Quixote fought courageously against windmills. What
 — *Quichotte* *vent*(m) *moulin*(m)

remains of the Pharaohs, Ptolemies, Cæsars, Plantagenets, Stuarts,
rest—(1st) *Pharaon Ptolémée César Plantagenêt Stuart*

and (of) all those names which have ruled the world? The
gouvern—(1st)

island of Cyprus is covered with oleanders. The heavier the miser's
île (f) *Chypre* *laurier-rose* *lourd* *avare*

iron-chest, the lighter the inheritors' grief. We have seen porcu-
coffre-fort *héritier* (pl) *douleur* (f) *porc-épic*

pinus alive, says Buffon, but never saw them, although violently
en vie

provoked, darting their quills. Tell the gardener to clean
excit—(1st) *dard*—(1st) *piquant* *nettoy*—(1st)

these flower-borders. Put those preserves and fruits in the pantry.
plate-bande *Mett*—(4th) *confiture* (f) —

SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

266. An adjective qualifying two or more nouns of different genders is put in the plural masculine ; as—
 His father and mother are French. | *Son père et sa mère sont Français.*

267. But if these nouns are synonymous, or joined together by the conjunction *ou*, the adjective agrees only with the last; as—

Birds construct their nests with wonderful art and address.	|	<i>Les oiseaux construisent leurs nids avec un art et une adresse surprenante.</i>
According to your conduct, you will acquire public contempt or confidence.	|	<i>D'après votre conduite vous acquerrez le mépris ou la confiance publique.</i>

PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

268. Adjectives are in French generally placed after the substantive (see n. 58, p. 19.)

269. But when an adjective is shorter than its noun, it is generally placed before it; as—

The great men of antiquity.	|	<i>Les grands hommes de l'antiquité.</i>
An humble countenance.	|	<i>Une humble contenance.</i>

270. Adjectives expressing shape, colour, flavour, nationality, race, or kind, are usually placed after their substantive; as—

The marigold is a yellow flower.	|	<i>Le souci est une fleur jaune.</i>
A bitter orange.	|	<i>Une orange amère.</i>

GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

271. The English prepositions *with*, *of*, *from*, and *by*, after an adjective or a participle, are generally rendered in French by the preposition *de*, which must be repeated before each noun.

272. Translate also by *de* the prepositions *by* after a comparative, *in* after a superlative, and *than* before a numeral.

Ex.,

I am satisfied with you.	|	<i>Je suis content de vous.</i>
I am older than him by a year.	|	<i>Je suis plus âgé que lui d'un an.</i>
The richest man in town.	|	<i>L'homme le plus riche de la ville.</i>
He received more than twenty wounds.	|	<i>Il reçut plus de vingt blessures.</i>

273. Adjectives expressing *aptness, tendency, or any habit*, require the preposition *à* after them ; as—

The physician is useful to society. | *Le médecin est utile à la société.*
 Are you ready to follow me ? | *Etes-vous prêt à me suivre.*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE ADJECTIVE.

EXERCISE XCI.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Le pauvre et le riche sont égaux après la mort. 2. La biche et le cerf légers sont difficiles à prendre. 3. Les Sabins portaient un casque, une épée et un bouclier rond. 4. Les Samoièdes se nourrissent de chair ou de poisson crue. 5. Le Shah de Perse portait un bonnet pointu, une robe jaune et des bottes dorées. 6. Les étoiles fixes sont innombrables. 7. Un sot orgueil est méprisable. 8. Rien n'est plus digne de respect que la véritable vertu. 9. Peu d'hommes sont contents de leur sort. 10. Marius était accoutumé à la fatigue. 11. César a été funeste à la liberté. 12. C'est le meilleur homme du monde. 13. Votre frère est plus grand que moi de deux pouces.

EXERCISE XCII.

Little causes often produce great effects. We admire in the style
 _____ *effet* (m) _____ (m)
 of Madame de Sévigné a grace and an elegance little common in
 _____ (f) _____ (f) *commun de*
 our days. He had white hair and beard. They brought
jour *cheveux* (pl) *barbe* (f) *apport*—(1st)
 us a roast leg of mutton. I shall send you whatever you wish,
gigot (m) *mouton* *désir*—(1st)
 cherry-colour ribbons, straw-colour gloves, red handkerchiefs, black
cerise *ruban* *paille* *gant* *rouge* *foulard*
 stockings, and blue silk. The first sigh of childhood is for liberty.
bas *soupir* *enfance* 20 (f)
 Authority is not incompatible with kindness. The young Duke of Bur-
autorité (f) _____ *douceur* (f) *Duc*
 gundy was full of good qualities. London is the most populous town
rempli *qualité* *peuplé* *ville* (f)
 in Europe. Mary is younger than Louisa by two years. They receive
 20 21
 more than a thousand pounds a year.
par an

SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

PLACE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

274. *Note.*—The rules about the place of personal pronouns have already been given (*vide* 86, 87, p. 29).

275. When there are several personal pronouns in a sentence, they come in the order shown in the following table:—

	ne	me	le	lui	y	en	auxiliary OR verb	pas	adverb	participle
Je	..	te	la	leur	..	..	....	..	..	....
tu	..	se	les	..	..	..	....	..	..	....
il
elle	..	nous	..	..	..	..	....	..	..	....
nous	..	vous	..	..	..	..	....	..	..	....
vous	..	se	..	..	..	..	....	..	..	....
ils
elles

EXAMPLES.

<i>Je ne leur en ai pas encore parlé.</i>	I have not yet spoken to them of it.
<i>Vous ne la lui avez pas donnée</i>	You have not given it to her.
<i>Ils nous les ont envoyés.</i>	They have sent them to us.
<i>Elle le leur y portera.</i>	She will take it to them thither.
<i>Lui en avez-vous parlé ?</i>	Have you spoken to him about it ?
<i>Ne leur en avez-vous pas encore parlé ?</i>	Have you not yet spoken to them about it ?

OF THE PRONOUN *SOI* (HIMSELF, HERSELF, ITSELF).

276. *Soi* stands for—

1st. A noun of thing; as, *L'aimant attire le fer à soi*; Loadstone attracts iron to itself.

2d. A noun of person used in a *vague* sense; as, *Chacun agit pour soi*; Each one acts for himself.

3d. A noun of person used in a *determinate* sense, to avoid an equivocation; as, *En remplissant les volontés de son père, ce jeune homme travaille pour soi*; In fulfilling his father's wishes, this young man works for himself.—*Richon's Grammar.*

OF THE PRONOUNS *EN*, *Y*, *LE*.

277. *Note.*—For the rules about these pronouns see 94, 95, etc., p. 32.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

278. The English possessive pronouns, *mine, thine, etc.*, are expressed in French by *à moi, à toi, à lui, etc.* When they come after the verb *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*; as—

This book is mine.	|	<i>Ce livre est à moi.</i>
Is that dog yours?	|	<i>Ce chien est-il à vous?</i>

279.—Such sentences, *a friend of mine, a sister of his*, must be translated by *un de mes amis* (one of my friends); *une de ses sœurs* (one of his sisters).

280. Should the noun be preceded by *this, that, these, those*, translate as follows:—

That horse of yours is fine.	|	<i>Votre cheval est beau; or, still better,</i> <i>vous avez là un beau cheval.</i>
------------------------------	--	--

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

281. *Ce* is frequently used instead of *il, elle, eux, elles*, before the verb *être*, when followed by *un, le, la, les*, or one of the personal pronouns *moi, toi, lui, eux, etc.*; as—

He is a man of great merit.	|	<i>C'est un homme d'un grand mérite.</i>
That is a fable.	|	<i>C'est un conte.</i>
Is that you? It is I.	|	<i>Est-ce vous? C'est moi.</i>

282. *Ce* is used with *être* before an adjective by itself; but *il*, if the adjective be followed by a complement; as—

Is it possible to be happy without virtue? No, it is impossible.	|	<i>Est-il possible d'être heureux sans la vertu? Non, c'est impossible.</i>
It is useless to do that.	|	<i>Il est inutile de faire cela.</i>

283. The pronoun *ce* is also used with *être* by emphasis in such sentences as the following:—

1st. To be satisfied with what we have is to be happy.	|	<i>Être content de ce qu'on a, c'est être heureux.</i>
2d. What pleases me in him is his modesty.	|	<i>Ce qui me plaît chez lui, c'est sa modestie.</i>
3d. Virtue is true nobility.	|	<i>La véritable noblesse, c'est la vertu.</i>

284. *It is, it was, etc.*, must be translated by *ce sont, c'étaient, etc.*, before a third person plural; in all other cases it remains singular; thus,—*ce sont mes amis; c'étaient mes deux frères; est-ce vous? c'est nous.*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

285. Relative pronouns must always be expressed in French, though understood in English ; as—

The book I am reading.	|	<i>Le livre que je lis.</i>
The lady we saw this morning.	|	<i>La dame que nous avons vue ce matin.</i>

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

On, ONE, PEOPLE, THEY, ETC.

286. The indefinite terms, *one*, *people*, *we*, *they*, etc., are translated in French by *on* with the verb in the third person singular ; *on* is also used to avoid the passive form, which is seldom employed in French ; as—

One finds friends everywhere.	|	<i>On trouve des amis partout.</i>
French is spoken here.	|	<i>Ici on parle français.</i>

287. Although *on* is generally masculine and singular, it becomes *feminine* when it refers personally to a female, and plural when it distinctly relates to several persons ; in the latter case, however, the verb remains in the singular, but the adjective, pronoun, or participle, must be plural ; as—

On n'est pas toujours jeune et belle, dit-elle à sa fille.
On est égaux quand on s'aime.

288. *Observation*.—For the sake of euphony an *l'* is put before *on* after the words *et*, *si*, *ou*, *que*, *quoi* ; as—

If any one calls, let me know. | *Si l'on vient, faites-le moi savoir.*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XCIII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Une bonne action porte sa récompense avec soi. 2. Heureux celui qui vit chez soi. 3. En combattant pour son pays le soldat combat en réalité pour soi. 4. L'imprimerie est plus perfectionnée aujourd'hui qu'elle ne le fut jamais. 5. Êtes vous la demoiselle dont on m'a parlé ? Oui, je la suis. 6. Madame, êtes vous satisfaite ? Non, je ne le suis pas.

7. Ces pommes sont délicieuses, prenez en quelques unes avec vous. 8. Je connais cet homme, de vous y fiez pas. 9. Cette maison est-elle à vous? non, elle est à un de mes oncles. 10. C'est à vous que je parle. 11. Le plus beau don que le ciel nous ait fait après la sagesse, c'est l'amitié. 12. Il est glorieux de se vaincre soi-même. 13. C'est moi qui ai parlé. 14. Ce furent les Phéniciens qui inventèrent l'écriture. 15. Ouvrir son âme à l'ambition, c'est la fermer au repos. 16. On n'est plus maître du secret que l'on confie. 17. Quand on est négligente comme vous, mademoiselle, on ne doit pas faire la leçon aux autres. 18. Aujourd'hui on est amis et demain on sera rivaux.

EXERCISE XCIV.

A thing good in itself is not always approved of. (A man) who
chose (f) *approuvé* * *celui* (n')

loves nobody but himself is not fit for society. We must accom-
 ~* *propre* à 20 (f) *on dev*—(3d)

moderate ourselves to the humour of others as much as we can (so). Are
 20 (f)

you prisoners? Yes, we are (so). Are you the prisoners they brought
prisonnier *amen*—(1st)

from Germany? Yes, we are (they). (Here are) some grapes,
Allemagne *voici*

(will you have) any? This umbrella is mine, and this stick is yours.
désirez-vous *parapluie*(m) *bâton* (m)

An uncle of his is dead. It is difficult to become learned without
deven—(2d) *savant*

studying much. (It is) very true, it is impossible. What supports
bien — *ce qui souten*—(2d)

man in the midst of trials is hope. He is a real genius. Who
au milieu *épreuve* *espérance* *véritable génie*

are these gentlemen? They are friends of ours. We admire
admir—(1st)

talents, we praise beauty, we honour virtue, but we love kindness.
 — *lou*—(1st) 20 (f) *honor*—(1st) *bonté* (f)

If one wishes to be loved, one must be amiable. (You must know),
voul—(3d) *il faut* *aimable* *Sachez*

Miss, that one may be pretty and yet not amiable. One
pouv—(3d) *joli* *cependant n'être pas*

is not always master of one's passions. To-day we are surrounded
maître *aujourd'hui* *environné*

with smiles, to-morrow with tears.
pleurs.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS WITH THE SUBJECT.

289. The verb must agree in number and person with the subject to which it relates, whether expressed or understood ; as—

Si vous le voyez, faites-lui bien des compliments de ma part.

290. When a verb has two subjects in the singular number, it must be placed in the plural ; as—

Mon frère et ma sœur jouent dans le jardin.

291. If a verb have two or more subjects of different persons, it agrees with the first in preference to the other two, and with the second in preference to the third ; in which case the collective pronoun *nous* or *vous* is generally placed before the verb ; as—

Vous et moi nous lisons.

Vous et votre frère vous lisez.

GOVERNMENT OR OBJECT OF VERBS.

292. A verb may have two objects, the one *direct*, the other *indirect* ; as—

J'ai donné un livre à mon fils.

293. It is important to observe that many English verbs may require a *direct object*, whilst the corresponding verb in French will require an *indirect object*, and *vice versa*. The prepositions generally used in these cases are *à* or *de* ; as—

Have you answered his letter?

He enjoys good health.

We are waiting for you.

Avez-vous répondu à sa lettre ?

Il jouit d'une bonne santé.

Nous vous attendons.

294. *Observe.*—The passive form being considered as rather heavy in French, it may be turned into the active form by causing the *object* to become the *subject* of the verb, and *vice versa* ; as—

He is loved by his relations, and esteemed by his acquaintances.

Ses parents l'aiment et ses connaissances l'estiment.

295. The passive form is also elegantly rendered by the reflective, in speaking of things (see 175, p. 89).

EXERCISE XCV.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. La foudre gronde, les éclairs sillonnent le ciel, et les hommes frémissent, comme dans l'attente d'une grande catastrophe. 2. La gloire et la prospérité des méchants durent peu. 3. Vous et moi pensons différemment sur une foule de choses. 4. Il faut que toi et ton compagnon vous fassiez le même serment. 5. Rendez à César ce qui appartient à César. 6. Il y a dans le salon une personne qui vous demande. 7. Ne médisons de personne. 8. On les fit prisonniers.

Ce qui se conçoit bien s'énonce clairement,
Et les mots pour le dire arrivent aisément.

EXERCISE XCVI.

Life is the road to death. We exist without knowing
chemin (m) *de mort* (f) *exist*—(1st) (inf. pr.)
how, we think without knowing why. Neither absence nor time
pens—(1st) *ni* —
can efface the memory of a service. Enthusiasm or the
effac—(1st) *souvenir*(m) *bienfait*(m) *enthousiasme*(m)
hatred of fools are the two enemies of men of genius. Your father and
haine (f) *sot* *ennemi* *génie*.
I are old friends. Neither you nor he are right. You, your brother and
ni
I shall go together. What dictionary do you use? Dost thou remember
20 (m) *te souvient-il*
those happy days of yore? It has been resolved to send troops to
troupe
Madagascar. This exercise may be done in half an hour.

PROPER USE OF TENSES.

THE IMPERFECT TENSE (INDICATIVE MOOD).

296. The *Imperfect* (as shown by the word itself *imperfectum*, not perfect), is used to denote an action not concluded or going on at the time spoken of, a habit or a state; as—

He was ill last time I saw him.

*Il était malade la dernière fois que
je l'ai vu.*

When I was in Paris I often went
to the Bois de Boulogne.

*Lorsque j'étais à Paris, j'allais
souvent au Bois de Boulogne.*

Alexander the Great was ambitious.

*Alexandre le Grand était am-
bitieux.*

PRETERITE DEFINITE.

297. The preterite definite is used to express a particular fact which took place in a period of time specified, and quite elapsed ; as—

Louis XIV. reigned seventy-two years.	|	<i>Louis XIV. régna soixante-douze ans.</i>
Louis XVI. died on the scaffold.	|	<i>Louis Seize mourut sur l'échafaud.</i>
Napoleon crossed the Alps in 1800.	|	<i>Napoléon franchit les Alpes en 1800.</i>

PAST INDEFINITE.

298. The *past indefinite* is used to express a thing as having taken place at a period of time not specified, or not entirely past, as *this year, this month, this morning*, etc. ; as—

He has travelled much.	|	<i>Il a beaucoup voyagé.</i>
I saw him a few days ago.	|	<i>Je l'ai vu il y a quelques jours.</i>

FUTURE.

299. The *future* expresses an action to be done at a time yet to come ; as—

I shall go and see you next week.	|	<i>J'irai vous voir la semaine prochaine.</i>
-----------------------------------	--	---

300. *Observe.*—In English the *present* tense is often used for the *future* after the conjunction *when, as soon as, after, as* ; this, however, is not done in French, and the *future* must be used ; as—

Come whenever you please.	|	<i>Venez quand il vous plaira.</i>
I shall go out as soon as I have done with this.	|	<i>Je sortirai dès que j'aurai fini ceci.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

301. The *subjunctive* is used after a word implying *doubt, wish, regret, fear*, or any affection of the mind except *belief, hope*, etc. ; as—

I doubt whether he will come.	|	<i>Je doute qu'il vienne.</i>
I am sorry he is gone away.	|	<i>Je suis fâché qu'il soit parti.</i>
I am glad you are here.	|	<i>Je suis bien aise que vous soyez ici.</i>
I think he is at home.	|	<i>Je crois qu'il est chez lui.</i>

302. The *subjunctive* is required after all verbs used negatively or interrogatively; as—

I do not think he is at home.	|	<i>Je ne crois pas qu'il soit chez lui.</i>
Do you think he will come?	|	<i>Pensez-vous qu'il vienne ?</i>

303. The *subjunctive* is generally used after pronouns and conjunctions followed by *que*, such as *qui que*, *quel que*, *si . . . que*, *afin que*, *de peur que*, etc.; as—

However rich he may be.	|	<i>Quelque riche qu'il soit.</i>
Let us go home before it rains.	|	<i>Revenons chez nous avant qu'il pleuve.</i>

INFINITIVE.

304. In French every preposition governs the infinitive, except *en*, which governs the present participle; as—

Of speaking; without studying; for learning; in writing.	|	<i>De parler; sans étudier; pour apprendre; en écrivant.</i>
--	--	--

PARTICIPLE.

305. The present participle is invariable, and must not be confounded with the verbal adjectives, which latter agree in gender and number with their subject; as—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	VERBAL ADJECTIVE.
<i>Une mère aimant ses enfants.</i>	<i>Une fille aimante.</i>
<i>Des enfants obéissant à leurs parents.</i>	<i>Voilà des enfants bien obéissants.</i>

306. The past participle agrees with its subject when alone, or used with the verb *être*; as—

<i>Un homme instruit.</i>	|	<i>Le thème est fini.</i>
<i>Une femme instruite.</i>	|	<i>La version est finie.</i>
<i>Des enfants instruits.</i>	|	<i>Les jeux sont finis.</i>

307. The *past participle* used with *avoir* agrees with its object when this object precedes it; as—

<i>La lettre que j'ai reçue.</i>	|	<i>Les livres que vous m'avez prêtés.</i>
----------------------------------	--	---

308. But it does not agree when the object comes after it; as—

<i>J'ai écrit une lettre.</i>	|	<i>Il m'a prêté ses livres.</i>
-------------------------------	--	---------------------------------

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE PROPER USE
OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

EXERCISE XCVII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. La confiance et l'amitié naissent dans les cœurs qui se ressemblent par la bonté. 2. Nous partons demain pour la Suisse. 3. Le roi Louis IX. rendait la justice sous un chêne. 4. Le jour commençait à baisser lorsque nous nous embarquâmes. 5. Le Portugal et la Hollande tinrent longtemps le sceptre des mers. 6. La parfaite construction des pyramides les a protégées contre les siècles. 7. Dans deux mois d'ici j'atteindrai ma vingtième année. 8. Il vaudra mieux que vous restiez avec nous. 9. Il est nécessaire que la justice ait son cours. 10. Saisissez l'occasion de peur qu'elle ne vous échappe. 11. Travailler est un devoir. 12. Ils marchaient à la mort chantant des hymnes. 13. Les montagnes mettent notre vallée à l'abri des vents brulants du midi. 14. Nous hasardons de perdre en voulant trop gagner. 15. Une nouvelle injure fait revivre celles qu'on avait oubliées. 16. Combien de lettres avez-vous reçues? J'ai reçu deux lettres et un journal. 17. Le plaisir du succès est toujours proportionné à la peine qu'il a fallu pour réussir.

EXERCISE XCVIII.

I think, therefore I exist. When we were in England we
pens—(1st) *donc* *exist*—(1st)
passed the winter in town, and in spring we returned to the country.
à *retourn*—(1st)
Many distinguished men sought his friendship and honoured
distingué *recherch*—(1st) *honor*—(1st)
him with their confidence. Peter the Great built St. Petersburg
de *confiance* (f) *Pierre* *bât*—(2d) *Saint Petersbourg*
in a wild and barren country. A fresh and favourable wind hastened
sauvage *aride* *pays* (m) *favorable* *hât*—(1st)
our departure, and we soon found ourselves in the middle of the
départ (m) *trouv*—(1st) *à* *milieu*
magnificent bay of Naples. What did you learn this morning? I learned
superbe *baie* —
some scenes of Racine's tragedies. Ignorance will never prevail
— (f) — (f) *préval*—(3d)
against science, nor slavery against liberty. When you are older you
— (f) *esclavage* 20 (f) *âgé*
will understand better the advantages of instruction. Do you think he
— (f)

will come to-night. It may be you are mistaken. Knowledge
ce soir *se tromp—(1st)*

ennobles man, whatever may be his birth. Brutus saw his two sons
ennobl—(2d) *origine(f) —*

expiring by his order. The loadstone has surprising effects.
expir—(1st) *ordre (m)* *aimant (m)* *surprenant effet (m)*

Surrounded on all sides, the Russians thought themselves lost,
Entour—(1st) *de côté* *Russe* *croi—(4th)*

and were obliged to surrender. Do you recollect all the places
se rend—(4th) *se rappel—(1st)* *de lieu (m)*

which we have visited? Yes. I have written their names in my
visit—(1st)

pocket-book.
porte-feuille.

SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB.

PLACE OF ADVERBS.

No. 216, p. 147.

NON and NE.

309. *Non* is used without a verb; *ne* is used before a verb, and completed by *pas*, *point*, etc., which comes after it; as—

Avez-vous vu mon frère? Non, je ne l'ai pas vu.

PAS and POINT.

310. *Point* is more exclusive than *pas*. The former denies absolutely, and means *not at all*; the latter is less positive. *Point* may be said of something permanent and habitual; *pas* of something accidental; as—

He does not work at all.	|	<i>Il ne travaille point.</i>
He is not working (now).	|	<i>Il ne travaille pas.</i>

311. *Pas* and *point* are omitted with the verbs *oser*, *pouvoir*, *cesser*, and *savoir* in the sense of *pouvoir*; as—

I dare not tell him.	|	<i>Je n'ose le lui dire.</i>
I could not consent to it.	|	<i>Je ne saurais y consentir.</i>

312. *Ne* is used after the conjunctions *à moins que*, *de crainte que*; and also after verbs expressing fear, such as *craindre*, *avoir peur*, etc.; as—

Unless you come.	|	<i>A moins que vous ne veniez.</i>
I fear he has gone out.	|	<i>Je crains qu'il ne soit sorti.</i>

313. *Pas* and *point* are used without *ne* in a reply to a question ; as—

How are you ? not very well. | *Comment allez-vous ? pas très-bien.*

PLUS and DAVANTAGE.

314. *Plus* is used with *de* or *que* ; *davantage* is used alone, and at the end of a sentence ; as—

He has more talents than his brother.	|	<i>Il a plus de talents que son frère.</i>
He is richer than I.	|	<i>Il est plus riche que moi.</i>
Will you have any more ?	|	<i>En voulez-vous davantage ?</i>

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE ADVERB.

EXERCISE XCIX.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Le temps écoulé ne revient point. 2. Sans l'estime il n'est pas de solide amitié. 3. Nul n'est prophète en son pays. 4. J'en suis enfin arrivé à bout, mais non sans difficulté. 5. Avez-vous été en Ecosse ? non, jamais. 6. Là où il n'y a pas de semence il n'y aura point de récolte. 7. Ne jetez pas les perles devant les porceaux de peur qu'ils ne les foulent aux pieds. 8. Il ne s'en fallut guère que le même boulet ne tuât le cheval et le cavalier. 9. Vous écrivez le Français mieux que vous ne le parlez. 10. Avez-vous fini votre thème ? non, pas encore. 11. Cette tour a plus de deux cent pieds de hauteur. 12. Une guinée vaut un schelling de plus qu'une livre sterling. 13. La vanité est dangereuse ; la paresse l'est encore davantage.

EXERCISE C.

Charles does not work as I should like. Alfred does not
 ——— *travaill—(1st) comme je voudrais* ———
 work at all. Has the postman come yet? No ; but he will soon
facteur
 come. Do not say a word about this. You cannot imagine
mot (m) de *s'imagin—(1st)*
 how much I suffer. I could not express to you all my grati-
souffr—(2d) *exprim—(1st)* *reconnais-*
 tude. We shall take care that the prisoner does not escape.
sance (f) prend—(4th) garde *échapp—(1st)*

I fear lest the opportunity may escape from us. I shall not go out
que l'occasion *

unless it is fine. Have you got any change? No; but I can easily
 * *monnaie*

get some. This fish weighs more than ten pounds.
se procur—(1st) poisson pes—(1st) livre.

Nothing is more odious than a false friend. These grapes are excellent;
 20 *faux raisins* —

will you have any more? No; not any more (I) thank you.
remerci—(1st)

SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

315. Prepositions in French always precede the words which they govern (*vide* 234, p. 153).

316. The English prepositions *on, in, by*, before a present participle, are translated in French by *en*; as—

On hearing of that.	|	<i>En entendant cela.</i>
In walking.	|	<i>En se promenant.</i>
By studying.	|	<i>En étudiant.</i>

317. *To*, followed by an infinitive, must be translated—
 1st, by *pour*, when it means *in order to*; as—

They did it to frighten you. | *Ils l'ont fait pour vous effrayer.*

2d, by *de*, when it can be changed into *of* or *from*; as—

Have the kindness to tell him. | *Ayez la bonté de lui dire.*

3d, By *à*, when the infinitive active may be changed into the infinitive passive; as,

This house is to sell. | *Cette maison est à vendre.*

322. *To* is translated by *à* before a name of town, and *en* before a name of country; as,

I am going to Marseilles.	|	<i>Je vais à Marseille.</i>
He is going to Spain.	|	<i>Il va en Espagne.</i>

323. *For* is translated—1st, by *depuis*, when denoting a point of time; as,

I have not seen him for a year. | *Je ne l'ai pas vu depuis un an.*

2*d*, By *pendant*, when it marks the duration of a period of time ; as,

I travelled for three months. | *J'ai voyagé pendant trois mois.*

3*d*, By *pour*, when it denotes the end ; as,

We are working for an examination. | *Nous travaillons pour un examen.*

324. *In* is translated—1*st*, by *à* before names of towns, and common nouns preceded by verbs of residence ; as,

He lives in Paris, in the country. | *Il demeure à Paris, à la campagne.*

2*d*, By *en*, before names of countries, provinces, persons, personal pronouns, and for expressing a length of time ; as,

They live in Ireland.	|	<i>Ils demeurent en Irlande.</i>
He has confidence in you.		<i>Il a confiance en vous.</i>
One can go to America in ten days.		<i>On peut aller en Amérique en dix jours.</i>

225. *At, at the house of,* are translated in French by *chez* (which corresponds to the Latin *apud*), and must be followed by a personal pronoun or a noun ; thus,

At my house ; at their houses.	|	<i>Chez moi ; chez eux.</i>
He lives at his uncle's.		<i>Il demeure chez son oncle.</i>

326. *From, meaning from the house of,* must be translated by *de chez* ; as,

I come from my friend's. | *Je viens de chez mon ami.*

327.—*Note.*—*Chez*, united to a pronoun by a hyphen, forms a compound substantive ; as, *un chez-soi*, a home, a house of one's own.

328. The English prepositions *on* and *in*, used before a date, a day of the week, etc., are not to be expressed in French ; as,

I shall expect you on Thursday.	|	<i>Je vous attends Jeudi.</i>
He generally comes in the evening.		<i>Il vient ordinairement le soir.</i>

329. Prepositions must be repeated in French before every substantive, unless there exists an intimate connexion between each other ; as,

I have correspondents in London, Paris, and Marseilles.	| <i>J'ai des correspondants à Londres, à Paris, et à Marseille.</i>
They spent their life in innocence and joy.	| <i>Ils coulaient leurs jours dans l'in- nocence et la joie.</i>

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX OF
PREPOSITIONS.

EXERCISE CI.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. En voulant trop gagner il a tout perdu. 2. C'est en lisant les bons auteurs qu'on se forme le goût et le style. 3. Il faut manger pour vivre et non pas vivre pour manger. 4. Le mérite de la vertu est d'être vertueux au milieu des méchants. 5. Ces appartements sont à louer. 6. Nous irons à Paris la semaine prochaine et de là en Suisse. 7. Ils sont à la campagne depuis trois mois. 8. Elle a été malade pendant plus d'un an. 9. Nous passons l'hiver à Paris et l'été en Ecosse. 10. D'où venez-vous? Je viens de chez le consul. 11. Où allez-vous? Je vais chez moi. 12. J'irai vous voir Samedi, s'il fait beau. 13. La terre multiplie ses dons selon le nombre et les besoins de ses enfants. 14. Bayard fut surnommé le chevalier sans peur et sans reproche.

EXERCISE CII.

Men learn to conquer their passions by struggling against
vainc—(4th) ——— *combatt—(4th)* *
them. Good-bye, she said, on leaving him. He hurt his foot
adieu ² ¹ *quitt—(1st)* *se bless—(1st)* *piéd*
(see Rule 176, p. 95) in leaping from his horse. He went to
saut—(1st) *

France to learn the language. Shall you have time to finish your letter before tea? That paper is good only for lighting the fire. We are going to Germany. They are going to Naples. Your brother and I have been walking for five hours. He has been in India for more than ten years.

Inde *an*

Do it for your old friend. My family lives in Touraine. One
demeur—(1st) ———

(can go) from Dover to Boulogne in less than two hours. Will you
va *Douvres* ———
be at home next week? No, I shall be at my friend Mr. Morton's.

I feel much more happy now (that) I have my own home. On
se sent—(2d)

Tuesday next we shall have a half-holiday. I take my (French lesson)
demi-congé *leçon de Français*
 in the morning, and my music lesson in the afternoon. Your dreams of
 20 *après-midi* *rêves*
 fortune, glory, and happiness have all vanished away. They
 — (f) 20 (f) *bonheur* (m) *s'évanouir*—(2d)
 leaped over walls, hedges, ditches, and fences.
saut—(1st) *par dessus muraille* (f) *haie* (f) *fossé* (m) *palissade* (f)

SYNTAX OF THE CONJUNCTION.

330. The conjunction *and* used in English to unite a verb of motion to another verb, must not be translated in French, but the second verb must be put in the infinitive ; thus,

Come and see me.	|	<i>Venez me voir.</i>
Let us go and take a walk.	|	<i>Allons faire un tour de promenade.</i>

331. *Que* (that) must always be used in French to join the verbs *croire*, *penser*, *espérer*, etc., to another verb, although it is not expressed in English ; as,

I believe the soul is immortal.	|	<i>Je crois que l'âme est immortelle.</i>
I hope he will come.	|	<i>J'espère qu'il viendra.</i>

332. *Que* is used in the second part of a sentence to avoid the repetition of such conjunctions as *si*, *lorsque*, *puisque*, etc. ; as,

If you go out, and see him.	|	<i>Si vous sortez et que vous le voyiez.</i>
-----------------------------	--	--

333. *Que* is also used in the body of a phrase, instead of *avant que*, *afin que*, and many other conjunctions ; as,

Do not go until everything is ready.	|	<i>Ne partez pas que tout ne soit prêt.</i>
--------------------------------------	--	---

334. *Que* at the beginning of a sentence answers to *pourquoi* (why), and also to *comme*, *combien* (how, how much, how many) ; as,

Why did you not tell me sooner ?	|	<i>Que ne me l'avez-vous dit plus tôt ?</i>
Oh ! how curious you are.	|	<i>Oh ! que vous êtes curieux.</i>
How many misfortunes she has experienced in her life !	|	<i>Que de malheurs elle a éprouvés dans sa vie !</i>

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX OF
CONJUNCTIONS.

EXERCISE CIII.

Translate, read, and parse—

1. Jean, courez mettre cette lettre à la poste. 2. Allons nous amuser dans le jardin en attendant le dîner. 3. Je crois que vous avez raison, mais je ne pense pas qu'il ait tort. 4. A quoi sert que vous ayez des talents si vous ne les cultivez pas et que vous ne les employiez pas comme il faut. 5. Le regard de Neptune est terrible quand il élève son trident et qu'il menace les flots soulevés. 6. Parlez plus haut qu'on vous entende. 7. Vous aurais-je blessé, que vous ne me parlez plus. 8. Que ne prenez-vous un peu plus de récréation. 9. Que de merveilles dans un petit insecte. 10. Que vous êtes heureux d'avoir de si bons parents.

EXERCISE CIV.

They (pret. ind.)	went	to have a game	at cricket in the meadow.	(Now),
<i>Monsieur</i>	—			<i>Voyons</i>

Master George, come and tell me all that you have seen. Do you think

there is going to be war?	I hope	not, although I	fear
	<i>guerre</i>	<i>espér—</i> (1st)	<i>craindr—</i> (4th)

it is almost unavoidable. If you have no experience, and follow

<i>inévitabile</i>	— (f)	<i>suivr—</i> (4th)
--------------------	-------	---------------------

your own counsel, you will be exposed to commit

<i>propre conseil</i> (m)	<i>s'expos—</i> (1st)	<i>commett—</i> (4th)
---------------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------

many mistakes. Since people plead, become ill, and die, there

<i>fautes</i>	<i>on plaid—</i> (1st)
---------------	------------------------

must be advocates, there must be physicians. We shall all be ready

<i>avocat</i>	<i>médecin</i>	<i>prêt</i>
---------------	----------------	-------------

before you have even begun to dress. It is two years since I

<i>même</i>	<i>s'habill—</i> (1st)	<i>Il y a</i>
-------------	------------------------	---------------

have seen him. Why do you not work more steadily?

<i>travaill—</i> (1st)	<i>attentivement</i>
------------------------	----------------------

Full many a flower (How many flowers) is born to blush

	(ind. pr.)	<i>s'épanou—</i> (2d)
--	------------	-----------------------

unseen. How glad I am to have finished my work.

<i>dans l'ombre</i>	<i>heureux</i>	<i>ouvrage</i> ()
---------------------	----------------	--------------------



ENGLISH TRANSLATION
OF ALL THE
FRENCH EXERCISES AND QUESTIONNAIRES
GIVEN THROUGHOUT THE BOOK ;
TO BE RE-TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

EXERCISE I.

PAGE 9.—1. The father and the mother are in the house. 2. The child is in the garden. 3. The pupils are in the class. 4. The master instructs the pupils. 5. The king is in the palace. 6. The queen is in the park. 7. The sun lightens us during the day, and the moon lightens us during the night. 8. The bird is in the nest. 9. The nightingale sings in the foliage.

QUESTIONS ON THE PHRASES OF THE FOREGOING EXERCISE.

1. Who is in the house? 2. Who is in the garden? 3. Where are the pupils? 4. Who instructs the pupils? 5. Who is in the palace? 6. Who is in the park? 7. What lightens us during the day? what lightens us during the night? 8. Where is the bird? What is the nightingale doing in the foliage?

INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

EXERCISE III.

PAGE 10.—1. A good book is a good friend. 2. The lily is a beautiful flower. 3. The dog is a faithful animal. 4. Rats and mice are mischievous animals. 5. Soldiers carry arms. 6. Edinburgh is a fine city. 7. The Rhone is a river. 8. Instruction is a treasure. 9. Charity is a virtue. 10. Idleness is a vice.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is a good book? 2. Is the lily a beautiful flower? 3. Is the dog a faithful animal? 4. What sort of animals are rats and mice? 5. What do soldiers carry? 6. Is Edinburgh a fine city? 7. What is the Rhone? 8. Is instruction a treasure? 9. What is charity? 10. What is idleness?

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE.

EXERCISE V.

PAGE 11.—1. God is the creator of the world. 2. The life of man is short. 3. The flowers of the fields exhale a delightful perfume. 4. The capital of France is Paris. 5. The capital of England is London. 6. A gold vase is more precious than a silver vase. 7. Wine is the fermented juice of the grape. 8. Cider is the fermented juice of the apple. 9. France is separated from Spain by the Pyrenees. 10. The Volga, the Danube, and the Rhine, are the largest rivers in Europe. 11. The best coffee comes from Mocha in Arabia.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who is the creator of the world? 2. Is the life of man short? 3. What exhales a delightful perfume? 4. What is the capital of France? 5. What is the capital of England? 6. Is a gold vase more precious than a silver one? 7. What is wine? 8. What is cider? 9. By what mountains is France separated from Spain? 10. What are the largest rivers in Europe? 11. Where does the best coffee come from?

DATIVE CASE.

EXERCISE VII.

PAGE 12.—1. God has given to every one an arm : to the lion, strength ; to the bull, horns ; to the bee, a sting ; to man, intellect. 2. Ambition sacrifices the present to the future ; pleasure sacrifices the future to the present. 3. Soldiers obey the orders of the general. 4. The professor will give an exercise and a translation to the pupils.

QUESTIONS.

1. Has God given an arm to every one? What arm has God given to the lion? to the bull? to the bee? and to man? 2. What is it that sacrifices the present to the future? What is it that sacrifices the future to the present? 3. Whom do soldiers obey? 4. To whom will the professor give an exercise and a translation?

PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

EXERCISE IX.

PAGE 13.—1. At the baker's one finds bread, cakes, and flour. 2. At the bookseller's they sell books, paper, ink, and pens. 3. In the garden there are flowers, in the forest trees, in the meadow grass. 4. In France they drink at breakfast chocolate, or milk and coffee (*café au lait*). 5. Burgundy produces excellent wine, Normandy excellent cider. 6. In Germany they make good beer. 7. The Scotch manufacture good flannel and splendid tartans.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is to be found at the baker's? 2. What do they sell at the bookseller's? 3. What is there in the garden? in the forest? and in the meadow? 4. What do they drink in France at breakfast? 5. What does Burgundy produce? and Normandy? 6. What do they make in Germany? 7. What do the Scotch manufacture?

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

EXERCISE XII.

Translate first in the Singular and then in the Plural.

1. A just law. 2. A thick wood. 3. The bright star. 4. A limpid streamlet. 5. A steep mountain. 6. An English merchant. 7. An aurora borealis. 8. An imperial decree. 9. A colossal monument. 10. A happy choice. 11. A blue string. 12. A heavy burden. 13. A superfluous detail. 14. An useful work. 15. An audacious pickpocket. 16. The black coat. 17. The pointed hat. 18. A French penny. 19. The intelligent eye. 20. The fiery horse. 21. The magnanimous hero. 22. A severe tribunal. 23. The Dutch Admiral. 24. The Roman Cardinal. 25. An extraordinary idea. 26. An aërial locomotive.

FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

EXERCISE XIII.

PAGE 18.—1. A prudent man; a prudent woman. 2. A little boy; a little girl. 3. A sincere friend; a sincere word. 4. A brief language; a short vowel. 5. A shameful act; shameful conduct. 6. A false

passport; a false signature. 7. An old book; an old hermit; an old sorceress. 8. A good breakfast; a good action. 9. Fatherly (art.) love; paternal (art.) severity. 10. The fat bull; the belly full. 11. A big rat; a big apple. 12. The first pupil; the first line. 13. A haughty mind; a haughty soul. 14. A new system; the new year (*an*, m.); the new year (*année*, f.). 15. A flattering project; a flattering thought. 16. An enchanting site; an enchanting beauty. 17. Nimrod the hunter; Diana the huntress. 18. A superior mind; a superior woman. 19. The creating genius; the creating power. 20. A white swan; a white heifer. 21. The Greek idiom; the Greek religion. 22. A favourite author; a favourite recreation. 23. The traitor Judas; the treacherous Fredegonde. 24. The third estate; a major third.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

EXERCISE XIV.

PAGE 19.—1. The Loire is a large and beautiful river, which waters the central part of France and falls into the Atlantic ocean. 2. The inhabitants of Guinea have black skins and flat faces. 3. The French monarchy began under (the) King Pharamond. 4. Arts are divided (they divide arts) into liberal arts and (into) mechanical arts. 5. The Minister of Public Instruction resides in Paris. 6. A little man may be also a great man. 7. The Italian language is soft and harmonious.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is the Loire? What part of France does it water? Where does it fall? 2. What did we say about the inhabitants of Guinea? 3. Under what king did the French monarchy begin? 4. How are arts divided (how do they divide arts)? 5. Where does the Minister of Public Instruction reside? 6. Can a little man be also a great man? 7. What qualities does the Italian language possess?

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

EXERCISE XVI.

PAGE 21.—1. An example is better than a counsel. 2. The nightingale sings best of all birds. 3. The rose is a beautiful flower; it is more

beautiful than the tulip. 4. The earth is larger than the moon, but much less large than the sun. 5. The slightest wind bends the reed; but the most violent tempest cannot uproot it. 6. The tiger is as brave but not so generous as the lion. 7. Siberia is a very cold country.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is better than a counsel? 2. What bird sings best? 3. Name a beautiful flower, more beautiful than the tulip. 4. Is the earth larger than the moon? Is it less large than the sun? 5. What did we observe about the reed? 6. What did we notice about the tiger? 7. What did we say of Siberia?

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

EXERCISE XVII.

PAGE 24.—1. The French Academy counts forty members. 2. The year is composed of twelve months: they are, January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, and December. 3. A week has seven days, namely, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, and Sunday. 4. The population of France is (of) about forty millions of souls; the population of the British islands, (of) nearly thirty millions. 5. London contains three millions of inhabitants, and Paris nearly two millions. 6. We have five senses: sight, hearing, smelling, taste, and feeling. 7. There are seven primitive colours: red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet. 8. In France they reckon by francs and by centimes. 9. A franc is equivalent to tenpence English. 10. The centime is the 100th part of the franc. 11. A sou is equivalent to ten centimes. 12. Twice five are ten.

QUESTIONS.

1. Of how many numbers is the French Academy composed? 2. How many months are there in the year? Name them. 3. How many days in a week? Name them. 4. What is the population of France, and that of the British Islands? 5. How many inhabitants have London and Paris? 6. How many senses have we, and what are they? 7. How many primitive colours are there? 8. How do they reckon in France? 9. What is the value of a franc in English money? 10. What is a centime? 11. How many centimes is a sou worth? 12. How much are twice five?

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

EXERCISE XX.

PAGE 27.—1. This village is well built. 2. This book is instructive. 3. That engraving pleases me. 4. These apples and (these) pears are

excellent. 5. This little girl is industrious, but that boy is negligent.
6. This tree is very vigorous, but those trees are nearly dead.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

EXERCISE XXII.

PAGE 28.—1. John, bring me my hat, my stick, and my gloves.
2. Lend me thy pencil or thy pen. 3. That person speaks incessantly
of his cousins (m), and of his cousins (f). 4. Our house is large, but our
garden is small. 5. Many kind things to your father from me.
6. Ernest has received a letter from his parents. 7. Try to gain his
friendship.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XXX.

PAGE 34.—1. The front of St. Sulpice in Paris is very fine; but
that of Notre-Dame is finer still. 2. Ignorance is disgraceful in those
who have had the means of learning. 3. Democritus and Heraclitus
were two philosophers; the latter was always crying, the former laughed
incessantly. 4. The half of four is two; this is true in Pekin as well
as in Paris. 5. There is this peculiarity in a little accident; it is that it
has sometimes great consequences.

QUESTIONS.

1. What do you say of the front of St. Sulpice in Paris, and of that of
Notre-Dame? 2. In whom is ignorance disgraceful? 3. What did we
notice about Democritus and Heraclitus? 4. What is the half of four?
Is that true in Pekin? 5. What is there peculiar in a little accident?

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XXXII.

PAGE 36.—1. The child who loves his parents, respects his masters,
plays and works with pleasure, that is the truly happy child. 2. We
have received from God the blessings we enjoy. 3. He is truly rich who
is contented with what he has. 4. We must endeavour to render our-
selves more and more capable of fulfilling the duties which our condition
imposes upon us. 5. The world may be compared to a stage, on which
many actors play their part under a mask.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who is the truly happy child? 2. What have we received from
God? 3. Who is he that is truly rich? 4. At what must we labour?
5. To what may the world be compared?

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS USED INTERROGATIVELY.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

PAGE 37.—1. Who calls? 2. Whom do you ask for? 3. What do you want? 4. What do you say about it? 5. What are you thinking about? 6. From what motive do you refuse that place? 7. Here are two roads, which one must we take? 8. To which of these two compositions do you give the prize? 9. Guess in which of these three boxes is the apple?

OF THE TWO AUXILIARY VERBS *AVOIR* AND *ETRE*.

EXERCISE XLII.

PAGE 50.—1. To be happy one must have what one wishes. 2. One has often need of a person inferior to one's-self. 3. The Rhone is a very rapid river, which has its mouth in the Mediterranean. 4. Camels are ruminant animals; they have two stomachs. 5. The Spartans were a sober and virtuous people. 6. The poet André Chénier was only thirty-two years old when he was condemned to death by the Tribunal Révolutionnaire. 7. Rome has had kings, consuls, and emperors. 8. Whatever fortune we may have, we are not exempt from work nor free from care. 9. If you wish people to have respect for you, you must have respect for others.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is required to be happy? 2. Of whom have we often need? 3. What is the Rhone? Where has it its mouth? 4. What species of animals are camels? 5. What sort of people were the Spartans? 6. How old was the poet André Chénier when he was condemned to death by the Tribunal Révolutionnaire? 7. What has Rome had? 8. Are we exempt from work or free from care, if we have fortune? 9. What must we do if we wish people to have respect for us?

REGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XLV.

PAGE 58.—1. Religion commands us to forgive our enemies, that God may forgive us. 2. Men having forgotten the Creator worshipped false deities. 3. He who seeks glory must face difficulties and dangers. 4. The wise man prefers knowledge to riches. 5. The Chinese use in eating two small ivory or ebony sticks, which they handle with great dexterity. 6. Caligula exacted from the Romans that they should grant him the same honours as to a god. 7. The Gospel contains this beauti-

ful precept, Love thy neighbour as thyself. 8. The ungrateful deserve (condit. pr.) that the sun should not shine on them. 9. Historians consider Charlemagne as one of the greatest princes that ever reigned.

QUESTIONS.

1. What does religion command us? 2. What did men do after having forgotten the Creator? 3. What must he face who seeks glory? 4. Who prefers knowledge to riches? 5. What do the Chinese use in eating? 6. What did Caligula exact from the Romans. 7. What precept does the Gospel contain? 8. What do the ungrateful deserve? 9. What do historians think of Charlemagne?

REGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

PAGE 63.—1. Before speaking, and especially before acting, we must reflect. 2. All that man builds is frail. 3. War was weakening Rome more than her conquests aggrandized her. 4. Balthazar underwent the punishment of which Daniel had warned him. 5. The Red Sea swallowed up in an instant Pharaoh's army. 6. The spectacles of the circus hardened the Romans. 7. God will reward the good and punish the wicked. 8. After the battle of Austerlitz all Europe resounded with the name of Napoleon and the fame of his conquests. 9. We must fulfil our duties if we wish Heaven to bless us.

QUESTIONS.

1. What must we do before speaking or acting? 2. What is frail? 3. What was the effect of war upon Rome? 4. What punishment did Balthazar undergo? 5. What was the fate of Pharaoh's army? 6. What hardened the Romans? 7. What will God do? 8. What happened after the battle of Austerlitz? 9. What must we do if we wish Heaven to bless us?

REGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LI.

PAGE 67.—1. Deceived hope is inconsolable. 2. Many persons owe their virtues to nature and their defects to education. 3. We are indebted to Christianity for the idea of the highest virtues. 4. The Proconsuls collected the taxes of provinces. 5. It was the brothers Montgolfier that first conceived the idea of constructing a balloon. 6. The Dutch discovered New-Holland in 1605.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is inconsolable? 2. To what do many persons owe their virtues and their defects? 3. To which religion are we indebted for the idea of the highest virtues? 4. What were the Proconsuls doing? 5. Who first conceived the idea of constructing a balloon? 6. In what year did the Dutch discover New Holland?

REGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LIV.

PAGE 71.—1. To lose those we love is, so to say, to die without going down to the grave. 2. Frost splits stones. 3. The heat of the sun melts snow. 4. Vipers have bitten, and will always bite. 5. The Germans pretended to descend from the god Tuiscon, son of the earth. 6. In the day of judgment we shall hear our sentence. 7. If we buy the superfluous, we shall soon sell the necessary. 8. The Venetians sold for a long time to Europe the products of the East.

QUESTIONS.

1. What is to lose those we love? 2. What does frost do? 3. What melts snow? 4. What was said about vipers? 5. From whom did the Germans pretend to descend? 6. What shall we hear in the day of judgment? 7. What will happen if we buy the superfluous? 8. What did the Venetians sell for a long time to Europe?

IDIOMATIC TENSES OF VERBS FORMED WITH *VENIR*,
ALLER, AND *DEVOIR*.

EXERCISE LVI.

PAGE 74.—1. I have just received a letter from France. 2. Your friend has just gone out this instant. 3. We have just been taking a short walk. 4. The boat had just started. 5. We had just had our breakfast together. 6. I am going to learn my lesson. 7. This young lady is about to sing a romance. 8. We were about to go out when our friend arrived. 9. I must start this evening. 10. They are to take tea with us to-morrow. 11. We were to start this morning for Boulogne; but the bad weather kept us. 12. Miss, you should be less fickle. 13. He had to consecrate to it a part of his capital. 14. She must have experienced many sufferings. 15. You should have told me sooner.

VERBS CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY.

EXERCISE LIX.

PAGE 79.—1. Queen Elizabeth never ceased to hate one of the ambassadors from the Court of France, because he had ridiculed her

French pronunciation? 2. Danger does not subdue the war-steed; on the contrary, it seems to inflame its courage. 3. Perfect happiness cannot be found in this life. 4. Philosophy could never take the place of Christianity. 5. Tasso was reduced to such a poverty that he could not write at night for want of a candle. 6. The inhabitants of the town are not generally so healthy and so vigorous as those of the country.

QUESTIONS.

1. For what reason did Queen Elizabeth never cease to hate one of the ambassadors from the Court of France? 2. Does danger subdue the war-steed? 3. Can perfect happiness be found in this life? 4. Could philosophy ever take the place of Christianity? 5. To what degree of poverty was Tasso reduced? 6. Are the inhabitants of the town as healthy and as vigorous as those of the country?

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

EXERCISE LXV.

PAGE 95.—1. What is your name? 2. My name 3. How is your father? 4. He is pretty well, thank you. 5. Where did you catch cold, Miss? 6. I caught cold last night in going out of the concert-room. 7. Come near the fire and warm yourself if you are cold. 8. How do you amuse yourself in the country? 9. We amuse ourselves with shooting and fishing. 10. Do you not get weary sometimes? 11. Never, we have always something to occupy ourselves during our leisure moments. 12. Did you wash your hands? 13. No, I have not had time. 14. I shall get angry if that is repeated a second time. 15. We must conform ourselves, as far as possible, to the manners and usages of the country in which we live. 16. You would have exposed yourselves to a great danger, if you had ventured upon that road at night.

EXERCISE LXVI.

PAGE 96.—1. The reflective verb is often used in French in the passive sense. 2. The *c* is pronounced like a *g* in the word *second*. 3. England, including the country of Wales, is divided into fifty-two counties. 4. The Olympian games were celebrated every fourth year. 5. In the Lyceums in France they usually go to bed at nine o'clock, and (they) get up at six o'clock. 6. The English have enriched themselves by commerce. 7. If we accustomed ourselves to make a scrupulous use of our time, we should do many more things. 8. The French took Algiers in 1830. 9. Lycurgus exacted that the youth of Lacedæmon should harden themselves at an early age to the fatigues of war.

QUESTIONS.

1. In what sense is the reflective verb often used in French? 2. In what word is the *c* pronounced like a *g*? 3. Into how many counties is

England divided? 4. At what intervals were the Olympian games celebrated? 5. At what o'clock do they go to bed and rise in the Lyceums in France? 6. How did the English enrich themselves? 7. What would follow if we accustomed ourselves to make a scrupulous use of our time? 8. What year did the French take Algiers? 9. What did Lycurgus exact from the youth of Lacedæmon?

UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

EXERCISE LXIX.

PAGE 102.—1. A traveller said, in speaking of the climate of Manchester, that it always rains there, except when it snows. 2. In Iceland it freezes till the month of June. 3. It is more than 400 miles from Edinburgh to London. 4. When the sky is red in the west, the country people assure that it will be windy the next day. 5. In the summer evenings when the atmosphere is heavy, it generally lightens. 6. When it was lightning without thunder, the ancients thought that Jupiter was trying the thunderbolts fabricated by the Cyclops. 7. Thanks to modern inventions, it will soon come to pass that nations will no longer consider distances. 8. They say about something that has been expected for a long time, Better late than never. 9. A drop of water is sufficient to make overflow a vase already full. 10. There were thirty-three provinces in France before the Revolution of 1789.

QUESTIONS.

1. What did a traveller say in speaking of the climate of Manchester? 2. Till what time of the year does it freeze in Iceland? 3. How many miles is it from Edinburgh to London? 4. What do the country people say when the sky is red in the west? 5. What happens in the summer nights when the atmosphere is heavy? 6. What did the ancients think, when it was lightning without thundering? 7. What will happen some day, thanks to modern inventions? 8. What do they say in allusion to something that has been expected for a long time? 9. What is sufficient to cause a full vase to overflow? 10. How many provinces were there in France before the Revolution of 1789?

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION,

ALLER, S'EN ALLER, ENVOYER.

EXERCISE LXXI.

PAGE 109.—1. Where are you going? I am going to the bookseller. 2. When will you go to the country? We shall go to the country next

month. 3. Let us go and take a turn, the weather is magnificent. 4. Where did you go last night? We went to the concert. 5. I must go to the post-office. 6. Are you going away already? No, but I shall soon be going away. 7. Let us not go away yet. 8. She is gone away. 9. Why did you not go away? It has been impossible for us to go away any sooner.

1. Laziness goes so slowly that poverty is not long catching it. 2. Lafontaine himself composed his own epitaph, which began by these two verses :

Jean s'en alla comme il était venu
Mangeant son fonds avec son revenu ; etc.

3. When one is ill, one must go to the physician ; our health is concerned in it. 4. The cat and the rat will never go together.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

PAGE 121.—1. The Romans conquered Gaul under the conduct of Julius Cæsar fifty years B.C. 2. The ship was assailed by a furious tempest ; it was enough to make one startle with fright. 3. His blood is boiling in his veins. 4. Where do you run so fast? 5. My sisters and I were gathering flowers in the meadow, when they came to tell us that he was dead. 6. Let us hasten—time flies. 7. How nice this nose-gay smells! 8. Hold fast, lest he may escape from you. 9. This book belongs to me. 10. Whence does that gentleman come? He comes from London.

1. England was conquered by William of Normandy, surnamed the Conqueror. 2. The marmot sleeps all the winter. 3. The piercing of the Isthmus of Suez will open to navigation a more rapid way between Europe and Asia. 4. Sound travels about 180 fathoms a second. 5. Mary Stuart, Queen of Scotland, died on the scaffold, victim to the jealousy of Elizabeth. 6. The three hundred Spartans who died at Thermopylæ immolated more than two hundred thousand Persians. 7. The bee gathers with care the juice of sweet flowers. 8. Rabbits go out of their holes at night.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LXXV.

PAGE 130.—1. Gentlemen, pray be seated. 2. She sat down close by me. 3. The mechanism that moves a watch is very ingenious and very

simple. 4. That colonel is about to be promoted to the grade of a general. 5. I cannot do anything to it. 6. Could you explain me that? 7. Do you know what sugar is worth? It is worth one franc a pound. 8. If you see Mr. X., please to give him my compliments. 9. What do they want with us?

PAGE 130.—1. Marius seated on the ruins of Carthage could not restrain his tears. 2. If young people knew, and old people could, how well the world would get on! 3. A bird in the hand is better than two in the bush (*literally, one have it is better than two you shall have it*). 4. He cannot always be he who wishes. 5. Nature in giving us two ears and only one mouth, meant to show us that we must listen more than speak. 6. The tortoise moves slowly.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

PAGE 145.—1. She was absolved by the judges. 2. We have resolved to go to France these holidays. 3. The enemy has been beaten. 4. I shall drink a cup of coffee. 5. Let us drink his health. 6. What do you translate? We translate Virgilius and Cicero. 7. Here are preserved cucumbers and onions. 8. The fire is out. 9. They believe to be right. 10. These trees are growing rapidly. 11. What do you say? I say nothing. 12. You will do well to write him. 13. Put the dots on the *i*'s. 14. Where was she born? She was born in Scotland. 15. Why do you appear surprised? It appears so strange to me. 16. Answer, if you please, instead of laughing. 17. Keep silent, gentlemen, there is no possibility of hearing one another. 18. I want to recreate myself. 19. We must conquer or die. 20. The king is dead, long live the king!

1. In confiding our sufferings we think to alleviate them. 2. The Druids thought to appease their gods by human sacrifices. 3. The vine does not grow in cold countries. 4. Fire reduces wood to ashes. 5. Death alone extinguishes hope in the heart of man. 6. Happiness sometimes springs from misery itself. 7. The Greeks vanquished the Persians at Marathon, Salamis, Plataeæ, and Mycale. 8. France has produced many great men. 9. The compass was not known by the ancients. 10. Flowers blow in spring. 11. An ass-driver said, 'I am not what I follow; for if I were what I follow, I would not be what I am.' 12. The memory of Henry IV. will live for ever in the heart of the French.

ADVERBS.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

Form Adverbs from the following Adjectives :—

PAGE 150.—Easy, polite, ordinary, first, second, fifth, happy, mortal, victorious, resolute, courageous, cowardly, weighty, patient, learned, dry, heavy, foolish, coarse, great, light, slow, different, frank, lengthy, assiduous, treacherous, new, low, proud, relative, perfect, uniform, blind, clear, profound, wicked, bitter, valiant, bold, careful, sufficient, last.

EXERCISE LXXX.

PAGE 152.—1. One has often need of a person inferior to one's-self. 2. The fewer desires we have, the easier we are satisfied. 3. How quick time passes away ! how rapidly years flow away ! 4. Let us never put off to the morrow what we can do to-day. 5. Sooner or later a good action will find its reward. 6. Is he at home ? I think he is. 7. Have you not seen your friend to-day ? Yes, and we have taken a walk together. 8. What is your name ? 9. Whence do you come ? 10. Where are you going ? 11. Of all birds, the nightingale is the one that sings most agreeably. 12. Cæsar knew as well how to handle the pen as the sword. 13. Our orchard produces many apples, but few pears. 14. Grasp all, lose all.

PREPOSITION.

EXERCISE LXXXII.

PAGE 155.—1. One hour is very long for the aching heart. 2. In all things we must consider the end. 3. Joan of Arc delivered France from foreign yoke. 4. Our soldiers fought one against ten. 5. Let us drink the health of our general. 6. All is lost save honour. 7. The wind is blowing from north to south. 8. Where are you going in this bad weather ? 9. Friendship is a want for the heart. 10. A lamb was quenching his thirst in the current of a pure stream. 11. It is the custom in France. 12. With industry and good conduct one succeeds in spite of one's enemies. 13. We must not judge people from appearances. 14. The young man runs to death ; she comes to meet the old man.

CONJUNCTION.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

PAGE 157.—1. One experiences a sweet joy in rendering a service to a friend. 2. Work and pray, if thou wilt please God. 3. We are always

rich enough, when we know how to be contented with what we have. 4. Sweetness is a requisite quality in a woman. 5. Neither gold nor greatness will render us happy. 6. These chants are sweet, but the sorrows and joys which they awaken are neither **my** sorrows nor my joys. 7. Patience and length of time do more than force or rage. 8. Fortune, whether good or bad, cannot change anything in the soul of the wise. 9. Whether I read or write I like to be alone. 10. May heaven protect you!

THE INTERJECTION.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

PAGE 159.—1. Ha! you here? it is very fortunate. 2. Well! come, are you ready? 3. Pray! leave me quiet. 4. Hush! they are sleeping, do not awaken them. 5. Oh! I am quite exhausted. 6. Ah! how well said! 7. Goodness! what an appetite you have got this morning! 8. Hey! what does he say? 9. Silence! the enemy is approaching. 10. Good! we are going at last to see them close. 11. To the right wheel—forward! march! 12. Aim! fire! 13. Ah! who is he that never wept over some cruel loss? 14. O Lord, hear us. 15. Ah heaven! what will become of us?

1. Eh! good morning, sire raven. 2. Footman! Hollo! my two footmen! 3. 'Heavens!' said the miller, 'Great fool is he who pretends to please everybody and his father.' 4. Heyday! you are very obstinate, my wife. 5. Well now! Sire Gregory, what do you earn a year? 6. Farewell then! fy to the pleasure which fear may corrupt. 7. 'I, tenches!' he said; 'I, a heron, that I should have such poor cheer! for whom do they take me?'

SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

PAGE 162.—1. War is a scourge. 2. The Alps separate France from Italy. 3. Marseilles is a commercial city. 4. The Emperor of Russia. 5. We shall go to Touraine next month. 6. Do you know Professor Wilson? 7. Oysters sell at four shillings the hundred. 8. He receives three hundred pounds a year. 9. A life full of charms. 10. This young lady sings with taste. 11. 'Soldiers,' exclaims Bonaparte, 'remember that from the summit of these Pyramids forty centuries look upon you.' 12. Economy is no avarice. 13. Dictionary of the French Academy. 14. What a magnificent spectacle sunrise presents in the Alps! 15. The more one studies, the more one appreciates the charms of study.

SYNTAX OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

PAGE 165.—1. The olive oil of Provence is very famous. 2. Spanish wool is much esteemed. 3. The inventor of gunpowder was a German monk, named Schwartz. 4. The whole fleet was destroyed by tempests. 5. A troop of young nymphs covered with flowers swam behind the chariot of the goddess. 6. Corneille, Racine, and Molière have illustrated the reign of Louis XIV., not less than Turenne and Condé. 7. Nature does not give birth every day to Homers, Virgils, Demosthenes, and Ciceros. 8. The three Horatii fought for Rome, the three Curatii for Alba. 9. Humming birds are truly little wonders. 10. There are in France about three hundred sub-prefects. 11. French brandies are the most esteemed.

SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

EXERCISE XCI.

PAGE 168.—1. The poor and the rich are equal after death. 2. The swift hind and stag are difficult to be caught. 3. The Sabinii wore a helmet, a sword, and a round shield. 4. The Samoides feed on meat or raw fish. 5. The Persian Shah wore a pointed bonnet, a yellow robe, and gilt boots. 6. Fixed stars are innumerable. 7. A foolish pride is contemptible. 8. Nothing is more worthy of respect than true virtue. 9. Few men are contented with their lot. 10. Marius was accustomed to fatigue. 11. Cæsar was fatal to liberty. 12. He is the best man in the world. 13. Your brother is taller than me by two inches.

SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

EXERCISE XCIII.

PAGE 171.—1. A good action carries its reward with it. 2. Happy is he who lives in his own home. 3. In fighting for his country the soldier fights in reality for himself. 4. Printing is more advanced now-a-days than it has ever been. 5. Are you the young lady of whom they spoke to me? Yes, I am. 6. Madam, are you satisfied? No, I am not. 7. These apples are delicious; take some with you. 8. I know that man; do not trust him. 9. Is this house yours? No; it belongs to an uncle of mine. 10. It is to you I am speaking. 11. The finest gift Heaven has made us after wisdom is friendship. 12. It is glorious to conquer one's enemy, but it is still more glorious to conquer one's-self. 13. It is I who have spoken. 14. It was the Phœnicians who invented writing. 15. To open one's soul to ambition is to exclude it from repose. 16. We are no longer masters of the secret which we intrust. 17. When one is negligent like you, Miss, one should not make the lesson to others. 18. To-day (we are) friends, to-morrow (we shall be) rivals.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

EXERCISE XCV.

PAGE 174.—1. The thunder roars, the lightnings rend the skies, and men shudder as if in the expectation of a great catastrophe. 2. The glory and prosperity of the wicked last a short time. 3. You and I think differently about a number of things. 4. It is necessary that thou and thy companion should take the same oath. 5. Render unto Cæsar what is Cæsar's. 6. There is in the drawing-room a person wanting you. 7. Let us slander no one. 8. They took them prisoners. 9. What is well understood is clearly expressed, and words easily come to utter (say) it.

PROPER USE OF TENSES.

EXERCISE XCVII.

PAGE 177.—1. Confidence and friendship spring among hearts that are alike by kindness. 2. We start to-morrow for Switzerland. 3. King Louis IX. used to give justice under an oak. 4. The day was beginning to fall when we embarked. 5. Portugal and Holland held for a long time the empire of the seas. 6. The perfect construction of the Pyramids protected them against ages. 7. In two months hence, I shall reach my twentieth year. 8. It will be better if you remain with us. 9. It is necessary that justice should have its course. 10. Seize the opportunity lest it may escape from you. 11. To work is a duty. 12. They were going to death in singing hymns. 13. The mountains shelter our valley from the burning winds of the south. 14. We risk losing all by trying to gain too much. 15. A new insult revives those we had forgotten. 16. How many letters have you received? I received two letters and a newspaper. 17. The pleasure arising from success is always in proportion to the trouble encountered in order to succeed.

SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB.

EXERCISE XCIX.

PAGE 179.—1. Expired time does not return. 2. Without esteem there is no solid friendship. 3. No one is a prophet in his country. 4. I have at last succeeded, but not without difficulty. 5. Have you been in Scotland? No, never. 6. Where there is no sowing there will be no harvest. 7. Do not cast pearls before swine, lest they trample them under foot. 8. It was little short of the same ball killing the horse and the rider. 9. You write French better than you speak it. 10. Have you finished your exercise? No, not yet. 11. This tower is more than two hundred feet high. 12. A guinea is worth one shilling more than one pound sterling. 13. Vanity is dangerous; idleness is still more so.

SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

EXERCISE CI.

PAGE 182.—1. By trying to gain too much he lost all. 2. It is by reading good authors that one forms one's taste and style. 3. We must eat to live, and not live to eat. 4. The merit of virtue is to be virtuous in the midst of the wicked. 5. These apartments are to let. 6. We shall go to Paris next week, and thence to Switzerland. 7. They have been in the country these three months. 8. She was ill for more than a year. 9. We spend the winter in Paris and the summer in Scotland. 10. Whence do you come? I come from the consul's. Where are you going? I am going home. 11. I shall go and see you on Saturday, if it is fine. 12. The earth multiplies her gifts according to the number and the wants of her children. 13. Bayard was surnamed the Knight without fear and without reproach.

SYNTAX OF THE CONJUNCTION.

EXERCISE CIII.

PAGE 184.—1. John, run and take this letter to the post-office. 2. Let us go and play in the garden while waiting for dinner. 3. I believe you are right; but I do not think he is wrong. 4. What avails your having talents, if you do not cultivate them, and if you do not employ them properly? 5. The look of Neptune is awful when he raises his trident and threatens the swelling waves. 6. Speak louder that we may hear you. 7. Could I have slighted you, that you do not speak to me any more? 8. Why do you not take more recreation? 9. How many wonders in a small insect! 10. How happy you are to have such good parents!

VERSIONS OR FREE EXERCISES

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

I. THE CRAB AND HER MOTHER.

'Why do you walk *so crookedly*,¹ child?' said an old crab to a young one. 'Walk straight!' 'Mother,' said the young crab, 'show me the way, will you? and when I see (*fut.*) you *taking a straight course*,² I will try and follow.'

Example is better than precept.

¹ *Ainsi de travers.* ² *Cheminer droit.*

II. A GOOD EXCUSE.

A lazy young fellow being asked what made him *lie in bed*¹ so long? 'I am busied,' says he, 'in hearing counsel every morning. Industry advises me to get up; Sloth to lie still; and so they give me twenty reasons *pro* and *con*.² *It is my part*³ to hear what is said on both sides, and by the time the cause is over, the dinner is ready.'

¹ *Restir au lit.* ² *Pour et contre.* ³ *C'est à moi.*

III. A GENEROUS PROPOSAL.

A young man *introduced himself*¹ to a rich and avaricious *merchant*.² 'Sir,' said he to him, 'I can make you gain fifty thousand francs!' 'Pray *walk*³ into my *office*,⁴ speak! explain yourself!' 'I know that you have a daughter *to whom you intend to give*⁵ a hundred thousand francs for her dowry. I, who am speaking to you, *will take*⁶ her with fifty thousand; *you will therefore be benefited*⁷ fifty thousand francs.'

¹ *Se présenter.* ² *Négociant* means an extensive merchant; *marchand*, a dealer.
³ *Donnez-vous la peine de passer.* ⁴ *Bureau.* ⁵ Say, To whom you destine.
⁶ Indicative present. ⁷ Say, There is therefore for you a profit of.

IV. THE BOY AND THE NETTLE.

A boy playing in the fields was stung by a nettle. He ran home to his mother, and told her that *he had but touched*¹ the nasty weed and it had stung him. 'It was precisely because you just touched it, my boy,' said the mother, 'that it stung you. The next time *you meddle with*² a nettle, grasp it tightly, and it will not hurt you.'

Do vigorously what you do at all.

¹ *Il n'avait fait que toucher.* ² *Vous aurez affaire à.*

V. A LADY FOND OF SQUINTING.

'Well, Sir,' exclaimed a lady, the vehement and impassioned partisan of Mr. Wilkes, in the day of his glory, and during the broad blaze of his patriotism; 'well, Sir, and will you dare deny that Mr. Wilkes is a great man, and an eloquent man?' 'Oh, by no means, Madam! I have not a doubt respecting Mr. Wilkes's talents.' 'Well, but, Sir, and is he not a fine man, too, and a handsome man?' 'Why, Madam, he squints, *doesn't he?*'¹ 'Squints! yes, to be sure he does, Sir, *but not a bit more than a gentleman and a man of sense ought to squint!*'²—COLERIDGE.

¹ *N'est-ce pas vrai.* ² *Mais pas plus qu'il ne convient à un gentilhomme et à un homme de bon sens de loucher.*

VI. NOT AT HOME.

Scipio Nasica, having gone to Ennius to speak to him, and calling him *from the street*,¹ a slave answered him that his master was not at home. But Scipio heard clearly that Ennius himself told the slave to answer that he was gone out. A little while after, Ennius went to Scipio, and also called him from the street; Scipio answered him *with a loud voice*² that he was not at home. 'How!' added Ennius, 'do I not know your voice?' 'You are very unpolite,' replied Scipio; 'the other day, I *believed*³ on the faith of your slave that you were not at home, and to-day you will not believe me myself!'

¹ *D'en bas.* ² *A haute voix.* ³ Preterite indefinite.

VII. THE CONTEST OF ART.

Zeuxis entered into a contest of art with Parrhasius. The former painted grapes *so truly*,¹ that birds came and pecked at them. The latter delineated a curtain so exactly, that Zeuxis coming in, said, 'Take away the curtain that we may see this *piece*.'² And finding his error, said, 'Parrhasius, thou hast conquered: I only deceived birds, *thou an artist*.'³

Zeuxis painted a boy carrying grapes; the birds came again and pecked. Some applauding, Zeuxis flew to the picture in a passion, saying, 'My boy must be very ill painted!'

¹ *Tellement au naturel.* ² *Tableau.* ³ Say, Thou hast deceived an artist.

VIII. THE CROW AND THE PITCHER.

A crow ready to die with thirst, flew with joy to a pitcher which he saw at a distance. But when he came up to it, he found the water so low, that with all his endeavours he was unable to reach it. Thereupon he attempted to break the pitcher, then to overturn it; *but his strength*

*was not sufficient to do either.*¹ At last, seeing some small pebbles *at hand*,² he dropped a great many of them into the pitcher, one by one, and so raised the water to the brim, and quenched his thirst.

Skill and patience will succeed where force fails. Necessity is the mother of invention.

¹ *Mais il n'avait pas assez de force pour cela.* ² *Près de là.*

IX. WHAT IS RICE ?

The Rice plant is a species of grass growing *very much like*¹ our own oats. *When ripe*,² each grain is enclosed in a yellow husk, and hung in fine clusters on very thin stalks. It grows best in very moist soil, and low lands which are flooded at particular seasons are on that account preferred for its cultivation. Before it is used for food, the husk is removed by rubbing the grain between flat stones and blowing the broken husks away. Machines are also used for the same purpose. In our own country rice serves us for puddings, and for thickening soup, and is both cheap and wholesome.

¹ *A peu près de la même manière que.* ² *A l'état de maturité.*

X. MILDNESS.

Sir Isaac Newton had a favourite little dog, which he called Diamond ; and being one day called out of his study into the next room, Diamond was left behind. When Sir Isaac returned, *having been absent but*¹ a few minutes, he had the mortification to find that Diamond, having thrown down a lighted candle among some papers, the nearly finished labour of many years was in flames, and almost consumed to ashes. This loss, as Sir Isaac Newton was then *very far advanced in years*,² was irretrievable ; yet, without once striking the dog, he only rebuked him with this exclamation : ' Oh, Diamond ! Diamond ! thou little knowest the mischief thou hast done.'

¹ *Après une absence de, etc.* ² *D'un âge très-avancé.*

XI. THE NUT : A FABLE.

Two boys *were once playing*¹ under a tree, when a nut fell from it near them. One of them picked it up. The other boy said : ' It is my nut, for I saw it fall.' ' No, it is mine,' said the other, ' for I picked it up.' *Just then a bigger boy came along, and he said*,² ' What are you disputing about ?' The little boys told him. ' Give it to me,' said he, and I will decide your quarrel for you.' So he cracked the nut, and gave one-half of the shell to one boy, saying : ' This is for you, because you saw the nut fall.' He then gave the other half-shell to the second boy,

saying, 'This is yours, because you picked up the nut.' Then, putting the kernel into his own mouth, he said, 'And this is for my trouble in cracking it.'

¹ *Étaient un jour à jouer.* ² *Au même instant survint un garçon plus âgé, qui leur dit.*

XII. THE TWO OXFORD STUDENTS.

Leopold. John, go to Mr. Marcus's room, and ask him to lend me Livingstone's *Travels in Africa*.

John. Mr. Marcus, my master sends me to beg you will lend him Livingstone's *Travels*.

Marcus. Tell Mr. Leopold that *I make it a rule never to lend my books,*¹ but if he will take the trouble to come to my room, he can read Livingstone's *Travels* as long as he likes.

Three months after.

Marcus. Thomas, go and ask Mr. Leopold to lend me his bellows to blow my fire. You will never be able to light it without them, I am quite sure.

Thomas. Mr. Leopold, your friend Mr. Marcus has sent me to beg the loan of your bellows to blow his fire.

Leopold. I am very sorry. Give my compliments to Mr. Marcus, and tell him I make it a rule never to lend my bellows; but if he will give himself the trouble of coming into my room, *he is welcome to blow my fire*² as long as he likes.

¹ *Je me suis fait une règle de ne jamais prêter mes livres.* ² *Libre à lui de me souffler le feu.*

XIII. COFFEE.

Coffee is an evergreen shrub *indigenous to the table-lands*¹ of Ethiopia. Its berries contain the coffee of commerce, called coffee-beans. The finest quality of coffee is produced in Arabia; but the largest quantities are exported from Brazil and Java.

Elevated situations are best suited for the growth of coffee. The trees are raised from slips, which are allowed four or five years to grow before the berries are gathered. They attain the height of eight or ten feet, *and continue to bear fruit for from thirty to fifty years.*² They resemble a handsome laurel, and bear a profusion of clusters of fragrant white flowers, succeeded by brilliant red berries, sweet and pulpy, which ripen to a purple colour, each containing two coffee seeds or stones.

Coffee was used in England some years before tea was introduced.

¹ *Originnaire des plateaux.* ² *Et continuent de porter des fruits pendant un espace de trente à cinquante ans.*

XIV. PARIS.

Paris, the heart and soul of France—the head-quarters of European luxury and pleasure—naturally excites, in the highest degree, the interest and curiosity of strangers, while those who know it, are confirmed in their attachment by the variety and freshness of its charms. ‘Paris,’ it has been justly said, ‘must be *the second home*¹ of every man who has a taste for the most refined enjoyments which wealth can bring. Whether he seeks for happiness *from art or society*,² or what is more generally understood by pleasure, let him go to Paris. All that is most distinguished awaits him there; he will find the noblest houses, the most imposing streets, the most attractive pleasure-grounds; he will find the most varied amusements, all ready to fill up his time if he come without knowing a soul or bringing a single letter. To another class, the extremely wealthy of all countries, *the new Paris holds out*³ ever-increasing attractions. To live in Paris for a year or two will be the desire of all the new generation *who can afford it*.’⁴

¹ *Le séjour adoptif.* ² *Dans les arts ou dans la société.* ³ *Le Paris de nos jours offre.* ⁴ *Qui en ont les moyens.*

XV. RABELAIS IN DIFFICULTY.

This celebrated wit was oncé at a great distance from Paris, and without money to bear his expenses thither. The ingenious author being *thus sharp set*¹ got together a convenient quantity of brick-dust, and having disposed of it into several *papers*,² wrote upon one, *Poison for Monsieur*; upon a second, *Poison for the Dauphin*; and on a third, *Poison for the King*. *He then laid*³ his papers so that his landlord, who was an inquisitive man and a good subject, might get a sight of them. *The plot*⁴ succeeded as he desired; the host gave immediate intelligence to the Secretary of State. The Secretary presently sent down a special messenger, who brought up the traitor to Court, and provided him, at the King’s expense, with proper accommodations on the road. As soon as he appeared *he was known to be*⁵ the celebrated Rabelais, and his powder, upon examination, being found very innocent, *the jest was only laughed at*,⁶ for which a less eminent *droll*⁷ would have been sent to the galleys.—SPECTATOR.

¹ *Dans cet embarras.* ² *Paquets.* ³ *Il arrangea ensuite.* ⁴ *Le tour.* ⁵ *On reconnut.* ⁶ *On ne fit que rire d’une plaisanterie.* ⁷ *Farceur.*

XVI. DEAN SWIFT OUTWITTED.

A friend of Dean Swift one day sent him a turbot, as a present, by a servant *who had frequently been on similar errands*,¹ but who had never received the most *trifling*² mark of the Dean’s generosity. *Having gained admission*,³ he opened the door of the study, and abruptly putting down the fish, cried *very rudely*,⁴ ‘Master has sent you a turbot.’ ‘Young man,’

said the Dean, rising from his easy chair, '*is that the way you deliver⁵ your message? let me teach you better manners; sit down in my chair, we will change situations, and I will show you how to behave in future.*' The boy sat down, and the Dean, going to the door, *came up⁶* to the table with a respectful pace, and making a *low bow⁷* said: 'Sir, my master *presents his kind compliments,⁸* hopes you are well, and *requests your acceptance of a⁹* small present.' 'Does he?' replied the boy; '*return him my best thanks,¹⁰* and there's half-a-crown for yourself.' The Dean thus drawn into an act of generosity laughed heartily, and gave the boy a crown for *his wit.¹¹*

¹ Qui avait fréquemment fait de semblables commissions. ² Moindre. ³ Etant entré dans la maison. ⁴ D'un ton très grossier. ⁵ Est-ce ainsi que vous vous acquittez de . . . ⁶ Donner une leçon de politesse. ⁷ S'approcher. ⁸ Profond salut. ⁹ Faire bien des compliments. ¹⁰ Say, Begs you to accept this. ¹¹ Remerciez-le bien de ma part. ¹¹ Say, The wit he had shown.

XVII. A DREAM OF CHARLES THE FIFTH.

The Emperor Charles the Fifth being one day *out a hunting¹* lost his way in the forest, and having come to a house, entered it to refresh himself. There were in it four men, who pretended to sleep. One of them rose, and approaching the Emperor, told him he had dreamt he should take his watch, and took it. Then another rose and said that he had dreamt that his surtout fitted him wonderfully, and took it. The third took his purse. At last the fourth came up, and said he hoped he would not take it ill if he searched him, and in doing it perceived around the Emperor's neck a small gold chain, to which a whistle was attached, which he wished to rob him of. But the Emperor said: 'My good friend, before depriving me of this trinket, I must teach you its virtue.' Saying this he whistled. His attendants, who were seeking him, hastened to the house, and were *thunderstruck²* to behold his Majesty in such a state. But the Emperor seeing himself out of danger, said: '*These men³* have dreamt all that they liked. I wish in my turn also to dream.' And after having mused a few seconds he said, 'I have dreamt that you all four deserve to be hanged;' which was no sooner spoken than executed before the house.

¹ A la chasse. ² Frappé d'étonnement. ³ Voici des hommes qui.

XVIII. SHAKESPEARE.

Of the personal history of this the greatest of our poets we know very little,¹ though many attempts have been made to twist surmises into facts. William Shakespeare was born at Stratford, on the river Avon, in Warwickshire, April 23, 1564, and he died there on the same day of the month, April 1616. The greater part of his life was spent in London, where he was the friend and companion of all the great men of the time, and a favourite with Queen Elizabeth and James I. His occupation was that

of an actor. Most of his works are written for the stage, and consist of historical dramas, of tragedies and comedies. *It would be difficult to single out of these any better than the rest,*² so fine are the characters from the highest to the lowest, *so suited to each are the speeches given them to utter.*³ Any one wishing to have the richest library attainable in the smallest number of volumes, to become acquainted with the purest and best English, to study the highest standards of beauty in character and sentiment, should purchase Shakespeare's works, and read and re-read them till they become to him familiar friends. The Englishman who does not know and read Shakespeare, does not know one of England's greatest glories, and will never be able to estimate fully all that his country's language can express.

¹ *L'histoire personnelle du plus grand de nos poètes est très peu connue.* ² *Il serait difficile d'en choisir un de meilleur que les autres.* ³ *Tant il y a de naturel dans le langage qu'il leur prête.*

XIX. A QUID PRO QUO.

It was customary with Frederick the Great, whenever a new soldier appeared in his guards, to ask him three questions; viz., 'How old are you? How long have you been in my service? Are you satisfied with your pay and treatment?' It happened that a young soldier, born in France, who had served in his own country, desired to enlist in the Prussian service. His figure caused him to be immediately accepted; but he was totally ignorant of the German dialect; and his captain giving him notice that the king would question him in that tongue the first time he should see him, cautioned him at the same time to learn by heart the three answers that he was to make to the king. Accordingly he learnt them by the next day; and as soon as he appeared in the ranks Frederick came up to interrogate him: but he happened to begin upon him by the second question, and asked him, 'How long have you been in my service?' 'Twenty-one years,' answered the soldier. The king, struck with his youth, which plainly indicated that he had not borne a musket as long as that, said to him, much astonished, 'How old are you?' 'One year, *an't please your Majesty.*'¹ Frederick, more astonished still, cried, 'You or I must certainly be bereft of our senses.' The soldier, who took this for the third question, replied *firmly,*² 'Both, *an't please your Majesty.*'

¹ *N'en déplaie à Votre Majesté.* ² *Avec aplomb.*

XX. SUGAR.

Sugar is a sweet crystallized substance obtained from the juice of the sugar-cane, a *reed-like plant*¹ growing in most hot climates, but supposed to be originally a native of the East.

The root of the cane is jointed, and sends up several stems which are also jointed, and which rise to a height ranging from eight to twenty feet. A leaf three or four feet long springs from each joint, the flowers, which are whitish, and enveloped in long down, grow in bunches at the top of the cane.

When the canes are ripe, which is generally in February, March, and April, *they are cut down close to the root,*² the leaves are stripped, the stalks are divided into convenient lengths, and taken at once to the crushing mill. Here they are squeezed between iron rollers, and the juice flows, after passing through a strainer, into large clarifying vessels. After this the juice *is several times brought to great heat with a view to*³ cause evaporation, and the deposit of a sugary sediment. When the juice is sufficiently boiled down, it is removed into a copper boiler, and from this it is conveyed into a shallow wooden vessel, in which it crystallizes. After the lapse of a few hours, the dark-looking mass, consisting of sugar and liquid molasses (*treacle*, being that part of the juice which will not crystallize), is put into hogsheads with holes bored in the bottom. These hogsheads are set on wooden frames over a tank, into which the treacle drains, after which the hogsheads are filled up, *headed in,*⁴ and are ready for exportation.

¹ Une espèce de roseau. ² On les coupe à la racine. ³ Est à plusieurs reprises fortement chauffé dans le but de. ⁴ Mis sur fond.

XXI. THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

The British Empire, exclusive of its foreign dependencies, *consists of*¹ the islands of Great Britain and Ireland, and of the smaller islands contiguous and subordinate to them. Great Britain, the largest and by far the most important of the British Islands, is divided into the kingdoms of England and Scotland; the former occupying its southern, the most fruitful and extensive, and the latter its northern, more barren, and smaller portion. After the withdrawal of the Romans from Great Britain, these two divisions became separate and independent states, between which the most violent animosities frequently subsisted. In consequence of the marriage of Margaret, daughter of Henry VII. of England, to James IV. king of Scotland in 1502, James VI., king of Scotland, ascended the English throne upon the demise of Queen Elizabeth in 1604. But, notwithstanding this union of the crowns, the two kingdoms had distinct and independent legislatures till 1707, *when,*² under the auspices of Queen Anne, a legislative union of England and Scotland was completed. In many respects, however, the institutions of the two countries still continue peculiar. The common law and the judicial establishments of England differ much from those of Scotland; the prevailing religion and the church establishment of the former are also

materially different from those of the latter ; and the manners and customs of the two countries, though gradually assimilating, still preserve many distinguishing features.—M'CULLOCH.

¹ *Comprend.* ² *Epoque à laquelle.*

XXII. MOTION OF OUR GLOBE.

This diurnal sphere on which we live *would alone evince*¹ the power of its Almighty Maker. When we consider its magnitude, its daily rotation, its annual revolution, the rapidity of its course, and reflect how vast must be the power to move this single mass, we are lost in amazement, and humbled under a deep sense of our own weakness. It *was*² calculated by a late astronomer, that with a lever whose fulcrum *was*³ six hundred miles from the earth's centre, and with a moving power equal to two hundred pounds in weight, or the power of an ordinary man, and in velocity equal to a cannon-ball, placed at the immense distance of twelve quadrillions of miles, it would require twenty-seven billions of years to move the earth one inch. How vain would be the united force of all the human beings that now people the earth to produce even this effect! Yet our globe rushes onward in its course, at the rate of one thousand miles a minute. But what is our earth to the planet Saturn, which is more than one thousand times bigger than this sphere of ours? What is it to the sun, nearly a million times greater? What is it to the whole planetary and cometary systems? Only one of five hundred masses. What is the planetary system itself? It is nothing when compared to the universe,—nothing to the thousands and thousands of systems, each enlightened by its sun and stars, extending through the immensity of space. From the nearest of these stars or suns our distance is not less than thirty-seven billions of miles; and when we reflect that luminous bodies are discoverable by the telescope, whose light, if we may credit the calculations of an eminent astronomer, has been nearly two millions of years in reaching our globe, though moving at the rate of more than ten millions of miles in a minute, what a conception does this give of the universe!—CROMBIE.

¹ *Suffirait à elle seule pour démontrer.* ² *Preterite Indefinite.* ³ *Condit. Pres.*

XXIII. THE DOCTOR'S SERVANT.

She was about thirty years old, and had a sufficiently plump and cheerful face, though it was *twisted up into an odd expression of tightness*¹ that made it comical. But the extraordinary homeliness of her gait and manner would have superseded any face in the world. To say that she had two left legs and somebody else's arms, and that all four limbs seemed to be out of joint, and to start from perfectly wrong places when they were set in motion, is to offer the mildest outline of the reality. To say

that she was perfectly content and satisfied with these arrangements, and regarded them *as being no business of hers*,² and took her arms and legs as they came, and allowed them to dispose of themselves just as it happened, is to render faint justice to her equanimity.

Her dress was *a prodigious pair of self-willed shoes*,³ that never wanted to go where her feet went; blue stockings; a printed gown of many colours, and the most hideous pattern procurable for money; and a white apron. She always wore short sleeves, and always had by some accident grazed elbows, in which she took so lively an interest that she was continually trying to turn them round and get impossible views of them. In general, a little cap perched somewhere on her head, though it was rarely to be met with in the place usually occupied in other subjects by that article of dress; but from head to foot she was scrupulously clean, and maintained a kind of dislocated tidiness. Indeed, her laudable anxiety to be tidy and compact in her own conscience as well as in the public eyes, gave rise to one of her most startling evolutions, which was to grasp her herself sometimes by a sort of wooden handle (part of her clothing, and familiarly called a busk), and wrestle, as it were, with her garments, until they fell into a symmetrical arrangement.—DICKENS.

¹ *Retroussée avec une singulière expression de roideur.* ² *Comme n'étant pas de ses affaires.* ³ *Une prodigieuse paire de souliers obstinés.*

XXV. ROBINSON CRUSOE'S HABITATION.

My thoughts were now wholly employed about securing myself against either savages, if any should appear, or wild beasts, if any were in the island; and I had many thoughts *of the method how to do this*,¹ and what kind of dwelling to make, whether I should make me a cave in the earth, or a tent upon the earth: and, in short, I resolved upon both, the manner and description of which it may not be improper to give an account of.

I soon found the place I was in was not for my settlement, particularly because it was upon a low moorish ground near the sea, and I believed it would not be wholesome, and more particularly because there was no fresh water near it, so I resolved to find a more healthy and more convenient spot of ground.

I consulted several things in my situation, which I found would be proper for me. First, health and fresh water, I just now mentioned. Secondly, shelter from the heat of the sun. Thirdly, security from ravenous creatures, whether men or beasts. Fourthly, a view to the sea, that, if God sent any ship in sight, I might not lose any advantage for my deliverance, of which I was not willing to banish all my expectation yet.

In search for a place proper for this, I found a little plain on the side of

a rising hill, whose front towards this little plain was steep as a house-side, so that nothing could come down upon me from the top. On the side of this rock there was *a hollow place*,² like the entrance or door of a cave; but there was not really any cave, or way into the rock at all.

On the flat of the green, just before this hollow place, I resolved to pitch my tent. This plain was not above a hundred yards broad, and about twice as long, and lay like a green before my door; and, at the end of it, descended irregularly every way down into the low ground by the sea-side. It was on the N.N.W. side of the hill, so that it was sheltered from the heat every day, till it came to a W. and by S. sun, or thereabouts, which, in those countries, is near the setting.

Before I set up my tent, I drew a half-circle before the hollow place, which took in about ten yards in its semi-diameter from the rock, and twenty yards in its diameter from its beginning and ending.

In this half-circle I pitched two rows of strong stakes, driving them into the ground about five feet and a half, and sharpened on the top. The two rows did not stand above six inches from one another.

Then I took the pieces of cables which I cut in the ship, and laid them in rows one upon another, within the circle, between these two rows of stakes, up to the top, placing other stakes in the inside, leaning against them, about two feet and a half high, like a spur to a post; and this fence was so strong, that neither man nor beast could get into it, or over it. This cost me a great deal of time and labour, especially to cut the piles in the woods, bring them to the place, and drive them into the earth.

The entrance into this place I made to be not by a door, but by a short ladder to go over the top, which ladder, when I was in, I lifted over after me, and so I was completely fenced in and fortified, as I thought, from all the world, and consequently slept secure in the night, which otherwise I could not have done; though, as it appeared afterwards, *there was no need of all this caution from the enemies*³ that I apprehended danger from.

Into this fence or fortress, with infinite labour, I carried all my riches, all my provisions, ammunition, and stores, of which you have the account above; and I made a large tent, which, to preserve me from the rains that in one part of the year are very violent there, I made double, viz., one smaller tent within, and one larger tent above it, and covered the uppermost with a large tarpaulin, which I had saved among the sails.

And now I lay no more for a while in the bed which I had brought on shore, but in a hammock, which was, indeed, a very good one, and belonged to the mate of the ship.

Into this tent I brought all my provisions, and everything *that would spoil by the wet*,⁴ and having thus enclosed all my goods, I made up the

entrance, which till now I had left open, and so passed and repassed, as I said, by a short ladder.

When I had done this, *I began to work my way into the rock,*⁵ and, bringing all the earth and stones that I dug down out through my tent, I laid them up within my fence in the nature of a terrace, *so that it raised the ground within about a foot and a half;*⁶ and thus I made me a cave, just behind my tent, which served me like a cellar to my house.—
D. DEFOE.

¹ *Sur la manière de m'y prendre.* ² *Un enfoncement.* ³ *Il n'y eut aucune nécessité de prendre toutes ces précautions contre les ennemis.* ⁴ *Que l'humidité aurait pu détruire.* ⁵ *Je me mis à creuser le roc.* ⁶ *De manière à hausser le niveau intérieur d'environ un pied et demi.*

XXV. THE BURNING OF MOSCOW (1812).

On the 14th September 1812, while the rear-guard of the Russians were in the act of evacuating Moscow, Napoleon reached the hill called the Mount of Salvation, because it is there that the natives kneel and *cross themselves*¹ at first sight of the Holy City.

Moscow seemed lordly and striking as ever, with the steeples of its thirty churches, and its copper domes glittering in the sun; its palaces of eastern architecture mingled with trees and surrounded with gardens; and its Kremlin, a huge triangular mass of towers, something between a palace and a castle, which rose like a citadel out of the general mass of groves and buildings. But *not*² a chimney *sent up smoke,*³ not a man appeared on the battlements or at the gates. Napoleon gazed, every moment expecting to see a train of *bearded*⁴ boyards arriving to fling themselves at his feet, and place their wealth at his disposal. His first exclamation was, '*Behold at last*⁵ that celebrated city!' *His next,*⁶ 'It was full time.' His army, less regardful of the past or the future, fixed their eyes on the goal of their wishes, and a shout of 'Moscow! Moscow!' passed from rank *to*⁷ rank. . . .

When he entered the gates of Moscow, Bonaparte, as if unwilling to encounter the sight of the empty streets, stopped immediately *on entering the*⁸ first suburb. His troops were quartered in the desolate city. During the first (few) hours after their arrival, an *obscure*⁹ rumour, *which could not be traced,*¹⁰ but one of those which are sometimes found to get abroad before the approach of some awful certainty, announced that the city would be endangered by fire in the course of the night. The report seemed to arise from those evident circumstances which rendered the event probable; but no one took any notice of it, until at midnight, when the soldiers were startled from their quarters by the report that the town was in flames. The memorable conflagration began amongst the coach-makers' warehouses and workshops in the Bazaar, or general market, which was the most rich district of the city. It was imputed to accident,

and the progress of the flames was subdued by the exertions of the French soldiers. Napoleon, who had been roused by the tumult, hurried to the spot, and when the alarm seemed at an end, he retired, not to his former quarters in the suburbs, but to the Kremlin, the hereditary palace of the only sovereign whom he had ever treated *as an*¹¹ equal, and over whom his *successful*¹² arms had now attained such an apparently immense superiority. Yet he did not suffer himself to be dazzled by the advantage he had obtained, but availed himself of the light of the *blazing*¹³ Bazaar to write to the Emperor proposals of peace with his own hand. They were despatched by a Russian officer *of rank*,¹⁴ who had been disabled by indisposition from following the army. But no answer was ever returned.

Next day the flames had disappeared, and the French officers employed themselves in selecting out of the deserted palaces of Moscow that which best pleased the fancy of each for residence. At night, the flames again arose in the north and west quarters of the city. As the greater part of the houses were built of wood, the conflagration spread with the most dreadful rapidity. This was at first imputed to the blazing brands and sparkles which were carried by the wind; but at length it was observed that *as often as*¹⁵ the wind changed—and it changed three times in that terrible night—new flames *broke always forth*¹⁶ in that direction *where the existing gale was calculated to*¹⁷ direct them on the Kremlin. These horrors were increased by the chance of explosion. There was, though as yet unknown to the French, a magazine of powder in the Kremlin; besides that, a park of artillery, with its ammunition, was drawn up under the Emperor's window. Morning came, and with it a dreadful scene. During the whole night, the metropolis had glared with an untimely and unnatural light. It was now covered with a thick and suffocating atmosphere of almost palpable smoke. The flames defied the efforts of the French soldiery; and it is said that the fountains of the city had been rendered inaccessible, the water-pipes cut, and the fire-engines destroyed or carried off.

Then came the reports *of fire-balls having been found*¹⁸ burning on deserted houses; of men and women that, like demons, had been seen openly spreading flames, and *who were said*¹⁹ to be furnished with combustibles for rendering their dreadful work more secure. Several wretches against whom such acts had been charged were seized upon, and probably, without much inquiry, were shot on the spot. While it was almost impossible to *keep*²⁰ the roof of the Kremlin *clear* of the burning brands which the wind showered down, Napoleon watched from the windows the course of the fire which devoured his fair conquest, *and the exclamation burst from him*,²¹ '*These are indeed Scythians!*'²²

The equinoctial gales rose higher and higher upon the third night, and

extended the flames, with which *there was no longer any human power of*²² contending. At (the dead hour of) midnight, the Kremlin itself was found to be on fire. A soldier of the Russian police, charged with being the incendiary, was *turned over to the summary vengeance*²⁴ of the Imperial Guard. Bonaparte was then, at length, persuaded by the entreaties of all around him, to relinquish his quarters in the Kremlin, to which, as the visible marks of his conquest, he had seemed to cling with the tenacity of a lion holding a fragment of his prey. He encountered both difficulty and danger in retiring from the palace, and before he could gain the city-gate, he had to traverse with his suite streets arched with fire, and in which the very air they breathed was suffocating. At length he gained the open country, and took up his abode in a palace of the Czar's, called Petrowsky, about a French league from the city. As he looked back on the fire, which, under the influence of the autumnal wind, *swelled and surged round the*²⁵ Kremlin, like an infernal ocean around a sable Pandemonium, he could not suppress the ominous expression, 'This bodes us great misfortune.'

The fire continued to triumph unopposed, and consumed in a few days what it had cost centuries to raise. 'Palaces and temples,' says a Russian author, 'monuments of art and miracles of luxury, the remains of ages which had passed away, and those which had been the creation of yesterday; the tombs of ancestors and the *nursery-cradles*²⁶ of the present generation, *were indiscriminately*²⁷ destroyed. Nothing was left of Moscow save the remembrance of the city, and the deep resolution to avenge its fall.'—WALTER SCOTT.

¹ Font le signe de la croix. ² Pas. ³ Ne fumait. ⁴ A longue barbe. ⁵ La voilà donc enfin. ⁶ La seconde. ⁷ En. ⁸ A l'entrée du. ⁹ Sourd. ¹⁰ A l'origine duquel on ne put remonter. ¹¹ En. ¹² Victorieuses. ¹³ En flammes. ¹⁴ Distingué. ¹⁵ Toutes les fois que. ¹⁶ Eclataient toujours. ¹⁷ D'où le vent pouvait. ¹⁸ Qu'on avait trouvé des globes enflammés. ¹⁹ Qu'on disait. ²⁰ (Keep clear) Débarrasser. ²¹ Et il lui échappa cette exclamation. ²² Ce sont des Scythes. ²³ Aucun force humaine ne pouvait plus. ²⁴ Livré à la vengeance. ²⁵ S'élevaient en tourbillons des toits du. ²⁶ Berceau. ²⁷ Tout fut.

XXVI. MARY STUART, QUEEN OF SCOTLAND.

Mary Stuart, the Queen Dowager of France, and the hereditary Queen of Scotland, was, without *any* exception, the most beautiful and accomplished woman of her time (1542-1587). Her countenance was lovely; she was tall, well-formed, elegant in all her motions, skilled in¹ the exercises of riding and dancing, and possessed of all the female accomplishments which were in fashion at that period.² Her education in France had been carefully attended to, and she had profited by the opportunities of instruction she enjoyed. She was mistress of several languages, and understood state-affairs. The beauty of Mary was enhanced by her great condescension, and by the good humour and gaiety, which she sometimes

carried to the verge of excess. Her youth, for she was only eighteen when she returned to Scotland, increased the liveliness of her disposition. The Catholic religion, in which she had been strictly educated, was a great blemish in the eyes of her people; but on the whole, the nation expected her return with more hope and joy than Mary herself entertained at the thought of exchanging the fine climate of France, and the gaities of its court, for the rough tempests and turbulent politics of her native country.

Mary set sail from France, 15th August 1561. The English fleet were at sea, and there is a great reason³ to believe that they had a purpose of intercepting the Queen of Scots, as a neighbour whose return was dreaded by Elizabeth. Occupied with anxious forebodings, the Queen remained on the deck of her galley, gazing on the coasts of France. Morning found her in the same occupation; and when they vanished from her eyes, she exclaimed in sorrow, 'Farewell, farewell, happy France; I shall never see thee more!'—WALTER SCOTT.

¹ *Elle excellait.* ² *Les talents d'agrément alors à la mode parmi les dames.* ³ *Il y a grand lieu de.*

XXVII. EXECUTION OF MARY STUART.

The two Earls of Shrewsbury and Kent came to Fotheringay Castle, and, being introduced to Mary, informed her of their commission, and desired her to prepare for death next morning at eight o'clock. She seemed nowise terrified, though somewhat surprised *with the intelligence*.¹ She said, with a cheerful and even a smiling *countenance*,² that she did not think the queen, her sister, would have consented to her death, or have executed the sentence against a person not subject to the laws and jurisdiction of England. 'But as such is her will,' said she, 'death, which puts an end to all my miseries, *will be to me most welcome*;³ nor can I esteem that soul worthy the felicities of heaven which cannot support the body under the horrors of the last passage to these blissful mansions.' When the earls had left her she ordered supper to be hastened, that she might have the more leisure after (it) to finish the few affairs which remained to her in this world, and to prepare for her passage to another. She supped sparingly, *as her manner usually was*,⁴ and her wonted cheerfulness did not even desert her on this occasion. She comforted her servants under the affliction which overwhelmed them, and which was too violent for them to conceal it from her. Towards morning she arose and dressed herself in a rich habit of silk velvet, the only one she had reserved to herself. Having passed into the hall, where was erected the scaffold, covered with black, she saw, with an undismayed countenance, the executioners and all the preparations of death. Here her old servant, Sir Andrew Melvil, *took*

*an affecting leave of her.*⁵ The warrant for her execution was then read to her; and during the ceremony she was silent, but showed in her behaviour an indifference and unconcern, as if the business had nowise regarded her. Before the executioners performed their office, the Dean of Peterborough *stepped forth*;⁶ and though the queen frequently told him that he needed not concern himself about her,⁷ that she was settled in the ancient Catholic and Roman religion, and that she meant *to lay down her life in*⁸ defence of that faith, he still thought it his duty to persist in his lectures and exhortations. She now began, with the aid of her two women, to disrobe herself; and the executioner also lent his hand to assist them. She smiled, and said that she was not accustomed to undress herself before so large a company, nor to be served by such valets. Her servants seeing her in this condition, ready to lay her head upon the block, burst into tears and lamentations. She turned about to them, put her finger upon her lips *as a sign of imposing silence upon them*,⁸ and having given them her blessing, desired them to pray for her. One of her maids, whom she had appointed for that purpose, covered her eyes with a handkerchief; she laid herself down without any sign of fear or trepidation, and her head was severed from her body *at two strokes*⁹ by the executioner. He instantly held it up to the spectators, streaming with blood and agitated with the convulsions of death. The Dean of Peterborough alone exclaimed, 'So perish all Queen Elizabeth's enemies!' The Earl of Kent alone replied, 'Amen!' The attention of all the other spectators was fixed on the melancholy scene before them, and zeal and flattery alike gave place to present pity and admiration of the expiring princess. Thus perished, in the forty-fifth year of her age, and nineteenth of her captivity in England, Mary, Queen of Scots; a woman of great accomplishments both of body and mind, natural as well as acquired.—HUME.

¹ *De cette nouvelle.* ² *Air.* ³ *Me sera des plus agréables.* ⁴ *Selon son habitude*
⁵ *Lui fit des adieux touchants.* ⁶ *Se présenta.* ⁷ *De donner sa vie pour.* ⁸ *Comme*
pour leur imposer silence. ⁹ *Au second coup.*

XXVIII. THE FAMILY OF WAKEFIELD BEFORE THE LOSS OF THEIR FORTUNE.

I was ever of opinion that the honest man, who married and brought up a large family, did more service than he who *continued single*¹ and only talked of population. From this motive, *I had scarce taken orders a year before*² I began to think seriously of matrimony, and chose my wife as she did her wedding-gown—not for a fine glossy surface, but such qualities as would wear well. To do her justice, she was a good-

natured, notable woman, and as for education, there were few country ladies who could show more. She could read any English book *without much spelling*; ³ but for *pickling, preserving*, ⁴ and cookery, none could excel her. She prided herself also *upon being* ⁵ an excellent *contriver in housekeeping*; ⁶ though I could never find that we grew richer with all her contrivances.

However, we loved each other tenderly, and our fondness increased as we grew old. There was, in fact, nothing that could make us angry with the world or each other. We had an elegant house, situate in a fine country and a good neighbourhood. The year was spent in moral or rural amusements, in visiting our rich neighbours, and relieving *such as were* ⁷ poor. We had no revolutions to fear, nor fatigues to undergo; all our adventures were by the fireside, and all our migrations from the blue bed to the brown.

As we lived near the road, we often had the traveller or stranger to visit us, to taste our gooseberry-wine, for which we had great reputation; and I profess, with the veracity of an historian, that I never knew one of them *find fault with it*. ⁸ Our cousins, too, even to the fortieth *remove*, ⁹ all remembered their affinity, without any help from the herald's office, and came very frequently to see us. Some of them did us no great honour by these claims of kindred; as we had the blind, the maimed, and the halt amongst the number. However, my wife always insisted that, as they were the same flesh and blood they should sit with us at the same table; so that, if we had not very rich, we generally had very happy friends about us; for this remark *will hold good through life*, ¹⁰ that *the poorer the guest* ¹¹ the better pleased he ever is with being treated; and as some men gaze with admiration at the colours of a tulip or the wing of a butterfly, so I was by nature an admirer of happy human faces. However, when any one of our relations was found to be a person of a very bad character, a troublesome guest, or one we desired to get rid of, upon his leaving my house, I ever took care to lend him a riding-coat, or a pair of boots, or sometimes a horse of small value, and I always had the satisfaction to find that he never came back to return them. By this the house *was cleared of such as* ¹² we did not like; but never was the family of Wakefield known to turn the traveller or the poor dependant out of doors.

Thus we lived several years in a state of much happiness; not but that we sometimes had those *little rubs* ¹³ which Providence sends to enhance the value of its favours. My orchard was often robbed by schoolboys, and my wife's custards plundered by the cats or the children. The squire would sometimes fall asleep in the most pathetic parts of my sermon, or his lady return my wife's civilities at church with a mutilated courtesy. But we soon got over the uneasiness caused

by such accidents, and usually in three or four days began to wonder how they vexed us.

My children, the offspring of temperance, as they were educated without softness, so they were at once well-formed and healthy; my sons hardy and active, my daughters beautiful and blooming. Our eldest son was named George, after his uncle, who left us ten thousand pounds. Our second child, a girl, I intended to call after her aunt Grissel; but my wife, who had lately been reading romances, *insisted upon her being called*¹⁴ Olivia. In less than another year we had another daughter, and now I was determined that Grissel should be her name; but a rich relation taking a fancy to stand godmother, the girl was by her directions called Sophia: so that we had two romantic names in the family; but I solemnly protest *I had no hand in it*.¹⁵ Moses was our next, and, after an interval of twelve years, we had two sons more.

It would be fruitless to deny my exultation when I saw my little ones about me; but the vanity and satisfaction of my wife were even greater than mine. When our visitors would say, 'Well, upon my word, Mrs. Primrose, you have the finest children in the whole country!' 'Ay, neighbour,' she would answer, 'they are as heaven made them—handsome enough if they be good enough; *for handsome is that handsome does*.'¹⁶ And then she would bid the girls hold up their heads, who, to conceal nothing, were certainly very handsome. Mere outside is so very trifling a circumstance with me, that I should scarce have remembered to mention it, had it not been a general topic of conversation in the country. Olivia, now about eighteen, had that luxuriancy of beauty, with which painters generally draw Hebe—open, sprightly, and *commanding*.¹⁷ Sophia's features were not so striking at first, but often did more certain execution; for they were soft, modest, and alluring. The one vanquished by a single blow, the other by efforts successively repeated.

My eldest son, George, was bred at Oxford, as I intended him for one of the learned professions. My second boy, Moses, whom I designed for business, received a sort of miscellaneous education at home. But it is needless to attempt describing the particular characters of young people that had seen but very little of the world. In short, a family likeness prevailed through all; and, properly speaking, they had but one character—that of being all equally generous, credulous, simple, and inoffensive.

—GOLDSMITH.

¹ Restait garçon. ² Il y avait à peine un an que j'avais pris les ordres que. ³ Sans avoir beaucoup à épeler. ⁴ Pour les conserves au vinaigre, les confitures. ⁵ D'être. ⁶ Ménagère. ⁷ Ceux qui étaient. ⁸ Y trouver à redire. ⁹ Degré. ¹⁰ Il est vrai de tout temps. ¹¹ Plus l'hôte est pauvre. ¹² Était délivrée de ceux que. ¹³ Petites misères. ¹⁴ Voulut qu'elle se nommât. ¹⁵ Que je n'eus rien à faire là dedans. ¹⁶ Car est beau qui fait bien. ¹⁷ Imposante.

XXIX. THE FAMILY OF WAKEFIELD AFTER THE LOSS OF
THEIR FORTUNE.

The place of our retreat was in a little neighbourhood, consisting of farmers who tilled their own grounds, and were equal strangers to opulence and poverty. As they had almost all the conveniences of life within themselves, they seldom visited towns or cities in search of superfluities. *Remote from the polite,*¹ they still retained the primeval simplicity of manners; and frugal by habit, they scarce knew that temperance was a virtue. They wrought with cheerfulness on days of labour, but observed festivals as intervals of idleness and pleasure. They *kept up the Christmas carol,*² sent *true-love-knots on Valentine morning,*³ ate pancakes *on Shrove-tide,*⁴ showed their wit on the first of April, and religiously cracked nuts on Michaelmas eve. Being apprised of our approach, the whole neighbourhood came out to meet their minister, dressed in their fine clothes, and preceded by a pipe and tabor; a feast also was provided for our reception, at which we sat cheerfully down; and what the conversation wanted in wit, was made up in laughter.

Our little habitation was situated at the foot of a sloping hill, sheltered with a beautiful underwood behind, and a prattling river before; on one side a meadow, on the other a green. My farm consisted of about twenty acres of excellent land, having given a hundred pounds for my predecessor's goodwill. Nothing could exceed the neatness of my little enclosures, the elms and hedge-rows appearing with inexpressible beauty. My house *consisted of but one storey,*⁵ and was covered with thatch, which gave it an air of great snugness; the walls on the inside were nicely whitewashed, and my daughters undertook to adorn them with pictures of their own designing. Though the same room served us for parlour and kitchen, *that only made it the warmer.*⁶ Besides, as it was kept with the utmost neatness, the dishes, plates, and coppers being well scoured and all disposed in bright rows on the shelves, the eye was agreeably relieved, and did not want richer furniture. There were three other apartments: one for my wife and me; another for our two daughters within our own; and the third with two beds for the rest of the children.

The little republic to which I gave laws was regulated in the following manner: by sunrise we all assembled in our common apartment, the fire being previously kindled by the servant. After we had saluted each other with proper ceremony (for I always thought fit to keep up some mechanical forms of good-breeding, without which freedom ever destroys friendship), *we all bent in gratitude to that Being*⁷ who gave us another day. This duty being performed, my son and I went to pursue our usual industry abroad, while my wife and daughters employed themselves in providing breakfast, which was always ready at a certain time. I allowed

half-an-hour for this meal, and an hour for dinner ; which time was taken up in innocent mirth between my wife and daughters, and in philosophical arguments between my son and me.

As we rose with the sun, so we never pursued our labour after it was gone down, *but returned home to the expecting family*,⁸ where smiling looks, a neat hearth, and pleasant fire were prepared for our reception. Nor were we without guests : sometimes Farmer Flamborough, our talkative neighbour, and often the blind piper, would pay us a visit, and taste our gooseberry wine ; for *the making of which*⁹ we had lost neither the receipt nor the reputation. These harmless people had several ways of being good company ; while one played, the other would sing some soothing ballad, 'Johnny Armstrong's Last Goodnight,' or 'The Cruelty of Barbara Allen.' The night was concluded in the manner we began the morning, my youngest boys being appointed to read the lessons of the day, and he that read loudest, distinctest, and best, was to have a halfpenny on Sunday to put into the poor's box.

When Sunday came, it was indeed a day of finery, which all my sumptuary edicts could not restrain. *How well soever I fancied my lectures*¹⁰ against pride had conquered the vanity of my daughters, yet I still found them secretly attached to all their former finery ; they still loved laces, ribbons, bugles, and catgut ; my wife herself retained a passion for her crimson paduasoy, because *I formerly happened to say it became her*.¹¹

The first Sunday in particular their behaviour served to mortify me : I had desired my girls the preceding night to be dressed early the next day, for I always loved to be at church a good while before the rest of the congregation. They punctually obeyed my directions ; but when we were to assemble in the morning at breakfast, down came my wife and daughters, dressed out in all their former splendour, their hair plastered up with pomatum, their faces *patched to taste*,¹² their trains bundled up into a heap behind, and rustling at every motion. I could not help smiling at their vanity, particularly that of my wife, from whom I expected more discretion. In this exigence, therefore, my only resource was to order my son, with an important air, *to call*¹³ our coach. The girls were amazed at the command ; but I repeated it with more solemnity than before. 'Surely, my dear, you jest,' cried my wife ; 'we can walk (it) perfectly well ; we want no coach to carry us now.' 'You mistake, child,' returned I, 'we do want a coach ; for if *we walk*¹⁴ to church in this trim, the very children in the parish will hoot after us.' 'Indeed,' replied my wife, '*I always imagined*¹⁵ that my Charles *was fond of seeing*¹⁶ his children neat and handsome about him.' 'You may be as neat as you please,' interrupted I, 'and I shall love you the better for it ; but all this is not neatness, but frippery. These ruffings, and pinkings, and patchings, *will*

*only make us hated by*¹⁷ all the wives of our neighbours. No, my children,' continued I, more gravely, 'those gowns may be altered into something of a plainer cut, for finery is *very unbecoming in us*¹⁸ who want the means of decency. I do not know whether such flouncing and shredding is becoming even in the rich, if we consider *upon a moderate calculation*¹⁹ that the nakedness of the indigent world may be clothed from the trimmings of the vain.'

This remonstrance had the *proper effect*;²⁰ they went with great composure, that very instant, to change their dress; and the next day I had the satisfaction of finding my daughters, at their own request, employed in cutting up their trains into Sunday waistcoats for Ted and Bill, the two little ones; and, what was still more satisfactory, the gowns seemed improved by this curtailing.—GOLDSMITH.

¹ *Loin du monde poli.* ² *Célébraient Noël.* ³ *Des lacs d'amour le jour de Saint Valentin.* ⁴ *Pendant le carnaval.* ⁵ *N'avait qu'un étage.* ⁶ *Elle n'en était que plus chaude.* ⁷ *Nous nous agenouillions tous pour remercier l'Être.* ⁸ *Mais nous retournions au milieu de la famille qui nous attendait.* ⁹ *La fabrication duquel.* ¹⁰ *Quoique je m'imaginasse que mes sermons.* ¹¹ *Il m'arriva de lui dire qu'elle lui allait bien.* ¹² *Avec des mouches à la mode.* ¹³ *De faire venir.* ¹⁴ *Nous allons à pied.* ¹⁵ *Je m'étais toujours figurée.* ¹⁶ *Aimait à voir.* ¹⁷ *Ne serviront qu'à nous faire détester de.* ¹⁸ *Très-déplacée en nous.* ¹⁹ *D'après un calcul modéré.* ²⁰ *L'effet désirable.*

EPISTOLARY CORRESPONDENCE

CONTAINING

PRACTICAL HINTS ON FRENCH LETTER-WRITING,
 EXAMPLES OF LETTERS ON VARIOUS
 SUBJECTS, WITH NOTES, ETC.

THE DATE OF LETTERS.

The date of letters, along with the place of residence, are generally placed at the top as in English; it is sometimes placed last, to the left of the signature; and (except the first) the cardinal number should be used for the date, which should precede the month; as—

PARIS, *le*¹ 1^{er} *Avril* 1867.

LONDRES, *ce*¹ 7 *Mai* 1867.

The abbreviations of the months are—*Janv.*, *Fev.* *Avr.*, *Juil.*, *Sept.*, or 7^{bre}, *Oct.* or 8^{bre}, *Nov.* or 9^{bre}, *Dec.* or 10^{bre}.

BEGINNING OF LETTERS.

After the usual form of address, *Monsieur*, *Madame*, *Mon cher Monsieur*, *Ma chère Dame*, *Ma chère Demoiselle*, *Mon cher Cousin*, or any other, as the case may be, begin your letter.

It is not elegant to begin a letter with a participle, or with *celle-ci*; as, *celle-ci est pour vous informer*; nor by *j'ai reçu la vôtre*.

Avoid also the following English expressions, because they are not French:—

J'étais, or je fus heureux.

Ma sœur, etc., est très-bien.

Je fus plu d'entendre que.

Je n'ai pas entendu de lui pour un longtemps.

Je fus favorisé avec, etc.

¹ *Le* and *ce* are frequently omitted: PARIS, 1^{er} *Janvier*.

The following may serve as a guide for beginning a French letter :—

Je m'empresse de répondre à votre lettre.
 J'ai reçu avec beaucoup de plaisir votre aimable lettre.
 Mille remerciements pour.
 La lettre que vous avez bien voulu m'écrire m'est parvenue ce matin.
 La lettre dont vous m'avez honoré.
 Je profite de l'occasion.
 J'ai l'honneur de vous informer que. Etc. etc.

CONCLUSION OF LETTERS.

The way of concluding a letter in French is generally more ceremonious and formal than in English ; the most usual forms are thus :—

Je suis, Monsieur,
 avec le plus profond respect,
 votre très-humble serviteur (m), servante (f),
 N. N.

J'ai l'honneur d'être, Madame,
 avec respect et reconnaissance,
 votre très-humble et très obéissant serviteur,
 N. N.

Agréez, Monsieur, l'hommage du respect,
 avec lequel je suis,
 votre obéissant serviteur,
 N. N.

Recevez, Monsieur, l'assurance
 de mon respectueux attachement,
 N. N.

The following expressions may serve as a guide to conclude a letter in French :—

Faites, je vous prie, mes compliments à votre chère famille, et croyez-moi,
 votre sincère ami, N. N.

En attendant le plaisir de vous revoir, je vous serre la main, *or* je vous embrasse,
 tout à vous, N. N.

Adieu, mon cher L— ; rappelez-moi au souvenir de tous mes amis, et croyez-moi,

votre, N. N.

Je vous salue avec une considération distinguée, et suis,

votre, N. N.

Veillez me croire pour la vie,

votre, N. N.

En attendant de vos nouvelles, je vous salue très-sincèrement, et suis,

votre, N. N.

Je vous présente mes salutations bien cordiales,

votre, N. N.

J'ai l'honneur de vous saluer,

votre, N. N.

J'attends votre réponse, et vous prie d'agréer l'assurance de mon parfait dévouement.

N. N.

Tout à vous de cœur et d'affection.

N. N.

Veillez excuser la peine que je vous donne et me croire,

votre, N. N.

Dans l'attente d'une prompte réponse, j'ai l'honneur d'être,

votre, N. N.

Agréez l'expression de ma gratitude pour les amitiés dont vous ne cessez de me combler, et croyez moi,

votre, N. N.

Comptez à jamais, Monsieur, sur la reconnaissance et l'attachement,

de votre, N. N.

Je saisis cette occasion de renouveler à—les assurances de ma parfaite considération.

Auriez-vous la bonté de me rappelez au souvenir de.

Faites mes amitiés à.

Mes tendres amitiés à.

Votre très-humble et très-obéissant serviteur.

Tout à vous.

Adieu, je vous embrasse comme je vous aime.

Croyez-moi votre tendre sœur, *or*, votre sœur affectionnée.

Mes devoirs, *or* mes respects à.

In mentioning the name of persons to whom we owe deference, we use *Monsieur*, *Madame*, or *Mademoiselle*, before their names.

We say *Ma chère Dame* if we do not add the name, and *Ma chère Madame L—*, if we add it.

DIRECTION OF LETTERS.

The former way of writing twice the title of a person on the envelope, as—

à Monsieur
Monsieur H. R., etc.,

is now out of use.

MONSIEUR F. C., PARIS. <i>Poste restante.</i>

MADAME DE VILLARS, N ^o . 3 AVENUE DE NEUILLY, PARIS.

MESSIEURS C. R., BANQUIERS, PARIS. <i>Pour remettre à</i>
--

MESSIEURS G. A., LIBRAIRES, N ^o . 107 QUAI D'ORSAY, PARIS. <i>Pressé.</i>
--

MODELS OF LETTERS TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

I. A YOUNG LADY TO HER MAMMA.

MY DEAR MAMMA,

You wish me to address my first French letter to Papa, and it is with the greatest pleasure that I obey your orders.

You know that *I have learned this language only a year*;¹ I therefore fear he will find a great many faults in the enclosed letter, but I rely on his indulgence, and the kindnesses with which he continually loads me.

*I have enclosed*² two landscapes which I finished two or three days ago, and which I hope you will accept as a token of *my best love*.³

Good-bye, my dear Mamma; tell (my) Papa to answer my scrawl soon, and to return it to me with the *corrections*⁴ of its numerous mistakes.

*I remain,*⁵

Dearest Mamma,

Your affectionate daughter,

N.

¹ *Qu'il n'y a qu'un an que j'apprends cette langue.* ² *Je vous envoie ci-inclus.*
³ *De mon affection.* ⁴ *Corrigé.* ⁵ *Toujours.*

II. A YOUNG LADY TO ANOTHER, INVITING HER TO SPEND A DAY.

23 PORTLAND CRESCENT, 18th August 1866.

DEAR EMILY,

Mamma *desires her respects*¹ to your Aunt, and *requests that she will be good enough to allow you*² to come and spend Saturday next with us. If the weather turns out fine, Mamma intends taking William and you and me to visit the wonderful palace and grounds at Sydenham, which will be a great treat to us all. We will start from here at ten o'clock, so you would require to take the omnibus that passes your house at half-past nine to be here *in good time*.³

*Drop me a note*⁴ in the course of to-morrow, saying if it will be convenient for you to come.

I am, dear Emily,

*Yours sincerely,*⁵

ALICIA MORRELL.

¹ *Présente ses respects.* ² *Et la prie de vouloir bien vous permettre.* ³ *A temps.*
⁴ *Répondez-moi.* ⁵ *Croyez moi, ma chère Emilie, votre sincère amie.*

III. REPLY TO THE PRECEDING.

SIDNEY SQUARE, 19th August 1866.

DEAR ALICIA,

I have **just received** your note, and as Aunt *is agreeable*,¹ I shall be delighted to come down on Saturday. I have long had a desire to visit the Crystal Palace, so I hope the weather will be favourable for the excursion.

I am at present busy with a piece of fancy work for a bazaar, the contributions to which must be sent in to-morrow, *so please excuse*² haste and brevity.

I shall be with you on Saturday punctually at the hour named. With Aunt's compliments to your Mamma,

I remain, dear Alicia,

Ever yours sincerely,

EMILY WALKER.

¹ *Y consent.* ² *Veuillez excuser.*

IV. A YOUNG LADY IN THE COUNTRY TO A COMPANION IN TOWN.

HOWDEN HEATH, 18th July 1866.

MY DEAR MARY,

In writing the above date I was surprised to find that I have been now nearly three weeks here—so quickly has the time passed that *it appears to me but a few days*¹ since I left home! There is no lack of amusement and pleasant occupation in this lively place, for, *what with pic-nics*,² walking, driving, and botanizing on fine days—reading, music,

and fancy-work in wet weather, and agreeable society at all times, *one would be very misanthropical indeed*³ not to enjoy the amenities of this retreat.

I was delighted to hear of your success in the new style of needlework, *but then*⁴ you are so painstaking and persevering in anything you undertake that you cannot help succeeding. I fear I have not patience enough for it, *but I mean to make a bold attempt*⁵ as soon as I get to town, and will probably be indebted to your kindness and experience to assist me in the selection of suitable materials.

I have added a large variety of specimens to my botanical museum, particularly of ferns, which are very abundant and beautiful in this quarter. You shall have an inspection of all in due time.

Have you been to Brighton yet? My cousin, Clara Hamilton, is there, and reports that it was never more gay than at present.

We have had charming weather all this week—bright sunshine every day. Trusting you have it equally fine, and are enjoying it as well as I am,

Believe me, my dear Emily,

Your most attached

JULIA.

¹ *Il me semble qu'il n'y a que quelques jours.* ² *Que vous dirai-je, entre les pique-niques.* ³ *Il faudrait être vraiment bien misanthrope.* ⁴ *Mais aussi.* ⁵ *Mais je me propose bien de m'y mettre tout de bon.*

V. A YOUNG LADY AT SCHOOL TO HER COUSIN.

MELTON, 5th December 1866.

MY DEAR MATILDA,

Thank you, gentle coz., for your kind and welcome letter. It arrived as the afternoon classes *were dismissing*,¹ and as I have now finished the preparation of my night-tasks, I hasten to reply to your inquiries.

It is arranged that the Christmas vacation will commence on Friday, the 22d, *on the evening of which day I hope*² to have the pleasure of joining the family circle of my dear Uncle and Aunt.

I am happy to say that Miss Lendon has recovered from her serious indisposition, and has returned to school as well and cheerful as ever. *She wishes to be kindly remembered to yourself and sisters.*³

I have just learnt by a letter from Papa that George leaves Portsmouth to-morrow morning in the *Heroine*, transport ship, with troops for Calcutta. He is quite delighted with the prospect of visiting that 'City of Palacés,' and I hope his agreeable anticipations may be realized.

Pray give my kind love to all with you, and believe me

Your affectionate Cousin,

EMILY MARKHAM.

¹ *Se terminaient.* ² *Et le soir du même jour j'espère.* ³ *Elle vous envoie bien des amitiés à vous et à vos sœurs.*

VI. A YOUNG LADY VISITING, TO HER SISTER.

GLASGOW, 17th August 1866.

MY DEAR BESSY,

*After a ride of six hours,*¹ I arrived here yesterday evening, and found cousin George waiting for me at the station. We got a cab at once, and drove rapidly through streets, squares, and crescents, to Aunt's house, a distance of, I am sure, two and a half miles.

This has been a busy and rather fatiguing day, as I have commenced in earnest, accompanied by Aunt and cousin Lucy, my inspection of the *lions* of the city. We first visited the Cathedral, a noble and venerable pile, which, *though several hundred years old,*² is still in good preservation; the eastern end, or chapel, being used regularly as a place of worship. Immediately behind this building, and separated from it by an inky-looking stream, *is the Necropolis*³—the 'City of the Dead'—situated on a rising ground, and crowded with almost innumerable monuments, many of which are very chaste and beautiful. A few minutes' walk brought us to the College—an ancient, dim-looking structure—situated in what I should suppose is the oldest part of the city. Here we visited the Hunterian Museum, an extensive collection of objects of natural history and curiosities, and then strolled through busy, crowded streets to the Green. This is a very large park, situated on the north side of the Clyde, and *very valuable as a place*⁴ of public recreation for the inhabitants of the Eastern portion of the city. On our way home we walked through the principal business streets,—the crowds of people and vehicles reminding me of the bustle and throng of the leading thoroughfares in London.

To-morrow we purpose visiting the principal objects of interest in the West End, and if time permits I shall give you an account of our ramble in my next letter. Meantime, *with love to Papa,*⁵ Mamma, and Sister Emma,

I remain,

My dear Bessy,

Your loving Sister,

LILLIE.

¹ *Après six heures en chemin de fer.* ² *Malgré plusieurs siècles d'existence.* ³ *Se trouve la Nécropole.* ⁴ *Très avantageux comme lieu.* ⁵ *Mille caresses à Papa.*

VII. A YOUNG GENTLEMAN VISITING, TO HIS SISTER AT HOME.

NORTHWOOD, WINDSOR, 14th July 1866.

DEAR JANE,

I promised to write to you after I had been a week or two here. This is a very pretty place, and Uncle and Aunt are very kind to me. *My cousins and I are always playing together*¹ in a nice meadow behind the garden, and when George comes home *he takes us a walk*² to the palace, or to gather wild-flowers.

On Wednesday last Aunt took Mary, Fred, and me to London by an early train. On our arrival we at once proceeded to Madame Tussaud's Waxwork Exhibition, where we spent about two hours. After dinner we drove to the Zoological Gardens in Regent's Park, and in the evening went to the Colosseum. As you have visited *all these sights*,³ I need not here give any description of them, but you may believe we were very much delighted with the day's excursion, though all felt fatigued when we got back here about eleven at night.

Tell mamma, with my love, that I am quite well and happy here.

I remain, dear Jane,

Your affectionate brother,

ARTHUR.

¹ *Mes cousins et moi sommes toujours à jouer ensemble.* ² *Il nous mène faire une promenade.* ³ *Tous ces endroits.*

VIII. A YOUNG GENTLEMAN TO A COMPANION, INVITING HIM TO A PARTY.

35 UPPER GROSVENOR STREET, KENSINGTON,
Tuesday, 17th December 1866.

DEAR WILLIAM,

Friday next is my birth-day, and as mamma *has kindly allowed me*¹ to invite a few friends to have some fun on that evening, I shall be very happy if you will join us at five o'clock. A friend of papa's, M. Isard, from Paris, *is to show us*² many wonderful things with a magic lantern, and Miss Tracey has several new games to amuse us, so I hope you can come *to share in the sport*.³

I am, dear William,

Yours sincerely,

GEORGE RENNIE.

Master William Gregory,
Gordonville.

¹ *A bien voulu me permettre.* ² *Doit nous montrer.* ³ *Prendre part aux amusements*

IX. REPLY TO THE PRECEDING.

GORDONVILLE, CHELSEA,

Wednesday Morning, 18th December 1865.

DEAR GEORGE,

I shall be very glad to join your party on Friday evening. *I am in high spirits about*¹ the merriment you expect, and as I have never seen a magic lantern, M. Isard's show *will be a great treat to me.*²

Mamma desires her compliments to your Mamma, and says, as my cousin, Tom Bell, from Liverpool, is staying with us just now, she will be happy if you will include him in your invitation for Friday. Tom is a capital reciter and mimic, and would enjoy the amusements very much.

I am, dear George,

Yours truly,

WILLIAM GREGORY.

Master George Rennie,
Kensington.

¹ *Je suis tout ravi à l'idée de.* ² *Me sera une grande fête.*

X. A YOUNG GENTLEMAN AT SCHOOL, TO HIS PAPA.

WELLINGTON LODGE, 25th August 1866.

MY DEAR PAPA,

This being our half-holiday, and the weather being unfavourable for taking the usual ramble in the country, *I shall pleasantly occupy*¹ my leisure by giving you a short account of the arrangements of the school, and the way in which we employ our time.

To begin at the beginning, the morning bell rings at half-past six o'clock, *when we rise,*² get washed and dressed, and are seated at our benches by seven, to say our night-tasks. At eight we have prayers, and immediately afterwards, breakfast. Then we have a few minutes in the playground, and from nine to twelve are engaged in our various studies. The next hour is passed in the playground. At one we dine, and at half-past two resume our studies in the class-rooms till five. From five till seven we amuse ourselves *as we best can,*³ and prepare our night-tasks from seven to eight, to be repeated next morning as already mentioned.

Besides Dr. Hood, who teaches mathematics and the classics, there are two assistant tutors, Messrs. Smith and Simpson—the former in the English, and the latter in the commercial department. Monsieur Dubois attends two hours every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday for French; Mr. Paton for drawing, and Herr Noah for gymnastics on Tuesdays and

Thursdays, one hour each per day. We have two half-holidays in the week, and on these occasions one or other of the masters accompanies us on an excursion to some interesting place in the vicinity, to a walk among the hills, or on the banks of the river.

In my next letter I will try to give you some account of my fellow-pupils, and the progress I am making in the branches I am studying.

Meantime I remain, with love to Mamma,

Your dutiful son,

FREDERICK.

¹ *Je me fais un bonheur d'employer.* ² *Alors on se lève.* ³ *Comme on peut.*

THOMAS LAURIE, EDUCATIONAL PUBLISHER,

THE EDUCATIVE READING BOOKS.

(*Constable's Educational Series.*)

First Book, Part 1, 2d.	Third Book, . . . 1s. 3d.	Advanced Book, . . . 4s. 0d.
" " 2, 4d.	Fourth Book, . . . 1s. 8d.	(or in Two Parts at
" " 3, 6d.	Fifth Book, . . . 2s. 6d.	1s. 6d. and 2s. 6d.)
Second Book, . . . 9d.	Sixth Book, . . . 3s. 0d.	Lesson Sheets, on Rollers, 2s. 6d.

WORKS BY JAMES CURRIE, A.M.,

Author of "Common School Education."

- Rudimentary English Grammar. Pp. 64, price 6d.
The Practical School Grammar. Pp. 128, price 1s. 6d.
A Practical Arithmetic for Elementary Schools. Price 1s. 6d. ; or in Two Parts, at 6d. and 1s. each. ANSWERS to the same, 1s.
The Principles and Practice of Early and Infant-School Education. With an APPENDIX of Hymns and Songs, with Appropriate Melodies. Price 4s. Eighth Edition. Pp. 310.
The Principles and Practice of Common School Education. Price 6s. Fifth Edition. Pp. 504.
The Elements of Musical Analysis: A Manual of the Theory of Music for Schools and Private Students. Third Edition. Part I., MELODY, 2s. Part II., HARMONY, 2s. Or in One Vol. 4s. 6d.
Infant School Hymns and Songs, with Music. Part I., HYMNS, 4d. Part II., SONGS, 6d.

-
- Practical Text-Book of English Composition. Cloth, price 1s.
Poetical Readings and Recitations, with Introductory Exercises in Elocution. By ROBERT ARMSTRONG, Esq., Head Master, Madras College, St Andrews, and THOMAS ARMSTRONG, Esq., Heriot Schools. Cloth, price 1s.
A Grammar of the English Language, with a Sketch of its History. By WILLIAM FRANCIS COLLIER, Esq., LL.D., Author of "History of English Literature," &c. Cloth, price 1s. 6d.
Spelling and Dictation Class-Book; with Etymological Exercises. By an INSPECTOR OF SCHOOLS. Cloth, price 1s. 6d.

SCHOOL REGISTERS.

1. Pupils' Register of Progress, for the DAY, MONTH, and YEAR. Price 2d.
 2. Daily Register of ATTENDANCE, FEES, SCHOOL-WORK, and MERIT. Space for 48 Weeks, 4 Quarterly Summaries, and 1 Yearly Summary. Seventh Thousand. Price 6d.
 3. Daily Register and Summary of ATTENDANCE AND FEES FOR INFANT-SCHOOL. Quarterly and Yearly Summaries for Two Years. Price 2s.
- Etymological Exercises for ELEMENTARY CLASSES, price 3d.
Wall Maps, Coloured, Mounted on Cloth, Rollers, and Varnished, each 5s.
The following are published :—
- | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|---------|----------|------------|
| The World. | Scotland. | Europe. | Africa. | China. |
| England. | Ireland. | Asia. | America. | Australia. |
- Outline of the Geography of Palestine, with Scripture References. By CHARLES MICHIE, M.A., Rector of Silver Street Academy, Aberdeen. 28 pp., price 4d.
Easy Catechism for Little Children, 32 pp., price 2d.

LAURIE'S BRITISH SCHOOL DESK, SEAT, AND TABLE, (combined.)
(*See Prospectus.*)

MANUSCRIPT WALL SHEETS, FOR TEACHING WRITING.

By JAMES DONALDSON, Deanston.

Size 19 x 26, Sold Ready for Hanging up, 6d. each.

- No. 1. Small Letters, arranged according to form.
- No. 2. Small Letters, formed into Words.
- No. 3. Capital Letters, arranged according to form.

38 COCKBURN STREET, EDINBURGH.

THOMAS LAURIE, EDUCATIONAL PUBLISHER,

PRACTICAL TEXT-BOOK of ENGLISH COMPOSITION.

Pp. 96. Cloth, price 1s.

THE object of this little work is to train the pupil by progressive steps in the art of Composition. In the first chapter he is initiated into the construction and composition of sentences. He is then shown that something more is wanted in the formation of sentences than mere correctness and intelligibility; that they must be constructed in a becoming manner or style; and the exercises under this head are intended to prevent him from falling into slovenly and inaccurate writing. The ornaments of Style, or Figures of Speech, are also explained,—those, at least, that are chiefly employed in Prose Composition. The next point to be gained is Facility of Expression; and here ample space is allowed for practice in the ready use and application of words. The pupil is now ready to begin Composition Proper, which implies the power of expressing a train of thought in appropriate language. Numerous exercises are prescribed, many of them in the skeleton form, under the three different kinds of Composition,—Descriptive, Narrative, and Didactic; and, in the Theme or Essay, he is required to combine these in the manner best adapted for the elucidation of his subject.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I. On the Composition of Sentences.—SECT. I. Explanation and Composition of Simple Sentences—II. Explanation and Composition of Compound Sentences—III. Explanation and Composition of Complex Sentences—IV. General Exercises in the Combination of Sentences.

CHAPTER II. On the Elements of Style.—SECT. I. Explanation of the Elements of Style—II. Exercises upon Clearness of Style—III. Exercises upon Purity of Style—IV. Exercises upon Strength of Style.

CHAPTER III. On the Ornaments of Style.—SECT. I. Exclamation—II. Interrogation—III. Antithesis—IV. Simile—V. Metaphor—VI. Hyperbole—VII. Personification.

CHAPTER IV. On Punctuation.—SECT. I. The Period—II. The Comma—III. The Semicolon—IV. The Colon—V. Interrogation, Exclamation, Dash, Parenthesis.

CHAPTER V. On Facility of Expression.—SECT. I.—Synonymous Words and Expressions—II. Elliptical Exercises—III. Direct and Indirect Speech—IV. Variation of Language—V. Conversion of Poetry into Prose.

CHAPTER VI. On Composition Proper.—1. DESCRIPTIVE SUBJECTS: SECT. I. Minerals—II. Plants—III. Animals—IV. Manufactured Substances—V. Instruments or Machines—VI. Scenes and Appearances from Nature—VII. Miscellaneous Subjects for Descriptive Composition. 2. NARRATIVE COMPOSITION: SECT. I. Historical Subjects—II. Reigns—III. Biographical Subjects—IV. Miscellaneous Subjects for Narrative Composition. 3. DIDACTIC COMPOSITION: SECT. I. Reflective Subjects—II. Miscellaneous Exercises for Reflective Composition—III. Argumentative Subjects—IV. The Theme or Essay Proper.

“I think highly of the Manual. The authors aim successfully at clearness, simplicity, and perspicuity.”—Rev. H. C. STUBBS, *Principal, Warrington Training Coll-ge.*

“I have perused it carefully, and consider it an excellent little work, thoroughly practical, and certain to do much more good than many larger treatises. I shall not fail to recommend it.”—JOHN E. SHERIDAN, Esq., *Head Inspector of Schools.*

“It is the best book of the kind I have ever seen, and has been adopted here.”—A. M. MORELL, *Queen's College Institution, London.*

“The work is a very useful one. The subject-matter is well classified, its exercises are various and graduated, and from its cheapness it will be welcomed by teachers generally. Owing to its simplicity and graduation, it is well suited for boys and girls in good upper schools, while our students in Training Colleges will be largely benefited by its use. I shall have great pleasure in introducing it here.”—F. HEDGES, *Teacher of Languages Lincoln Training College.*

Teachers wishing to examine it are requested to apply to the Publisher.

38 COCKBURN STREET, EDINBURGH.

THOMAS LAURIE, EDUCATIONAL PUBLISHER,

NEW WORK BY THE REV. JAMES CURRIE,

AUTHOR OF "COMMON SCHOOL-EDUCATION," "EARLY EDUCATION," ETC.

A PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS. Price 1s. 6d.; or in Two Parts, at 6d. and 1s. each. ANSWERS to the same, 1s.

This treatise is designed to serve as a text-book for pupils up till twelve years of age. It comprises, therefore, all that is needed by the pupils of common schools, and by those of higher schools till they have completed their elementary education.

The treatise is not one of theory, since the instruction of pupils up till that age must be, in the main, practical: on the other hand, it is not a collection of examples alone, since the only practical instruction worthy of the name is that which sets the processes before them in a rational way. It endeavours to present that combination of theory with practice which constitutes the highest merit of an elementary text-book. The explanations are given concisely, and in the form in which they are likely to be apprehended by the pupil at the earliest possible moment; whilst the exercises for practice will be found to be exceedingly numerous and very carefully graduated.

In particular, Notation and the four elementary operations, on a satisfactory knowledge of which the pupil's subsequent progress depends, are treated with great fulness. An introductory text-book of Arithmetic should not be a mere condensation of a higher one; but should devote the space which it gains from the omission of certain of the more advanced rules to the ampler treatment of those which are fundamental. Where the arithmetic of a school is weak at all, it is in these rules that the weakness almost invariably lies; and it is in these rules, according to the testimony of all competent authorities, that the most material improvement in the teaching of the subject is to be looked for.

In the arrangement of the book the author has kept in view the Standards of the Revised Code, and those conducting schools under the Code will find it well suited to its requirements.

"This is by far the best elementary Arithmetic which I have yet seen—combining as it does a just regard to the theory of the various rules with a clear perception of the practical necessities of the schoolroom. The lessons on Notation, a subject too little dwelt upon by many teachers in the earlier stages, are particularly good and full. The exercises are of the most varied sort, and very skilfully constructed."—SIMON S. LAURIE, *Sec. General Assembly's Education Committee, and Dick Bequest Visitor.*

"The friends of elementary education will hail with satisfaction the appearance in this field of an author of such extensive experience and acquirements as Mr Currie; and will expect to find in his work that just combination of the philosophical and practical which is so characteristic of his other writings. The book will not disappoint them. . . . It is thoroughly practical—simple in language, accurate in explanation, and very methodical. The pupil's knowledge is well tested and advanced by the excellent set of exercises appended to each section."—*Museum.*

FIRST STEPS IN ARITHMETIC: Being the first 64 pages of the above. Price 6d.

38 COCKBURN STREET, EDINBURGH.

THOMAS LAURIE, EDUCATIONAL PUBLISHER,

NEW WORK BY DR COLLIER.

—◆—
A GRAMMAR
OF
THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.
WITH
A SKETCH OF ITS HISTORY.

BY
WILLIAM FRANCIS COLLIER, Esq., LL.D.,
AUTHOR OF "HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE," ETC.

Cloth, price 1s. 6d.

THE distinctive features of this English Grammar are :—

1. It aims at greater simplicity of language and clearness of explanation than are usual in works of its kind.
2. Throughout, it brings the grammatical forms of Anglo-Saxon into close comparison with those of Modern English; for the purpose both of illustrating the growth of the latter, and of giving a student some idea of the structure of the parent-tongue.
3. The Rules of Construction are given in connexion with the Parts of Speech they belong to.
4. A concise Order of Parsing, with Examples and Exercises, is appended to the sections dealing with the various parts of Speech.
5. It presents the Essentials of English Grammar clearly and fully; but is not encumbered with specimens of bad English to be corrected, or any similar exercises of questionable value.
6. It contains a Sketch of the History of the English Language, brief, but clear, and sufficiently full for all purposes of School-work.

From the Museum.—“Thoroughly practical, and supplying in an attractive form and manner that kind of information and exercise that schoolboys most require. To long practical experience Dr Collier adds high scholarship and a philosophical knowledge of the principles of general grammar. . . . We predict for the volume a speedy and wide circulation, and we wish it all success.”

From the Principal of the Culham Training College, Oxon.—“The work will be of great service, as it is clearly and intelligibly written.”

From the Head-master of the British School, Stanstead.—“The arrangement is excellent, and the explanations clear and full. It is admirably adapted for schools, and also contains most of that subsidiary information desired by older students.”

From the Principal of the People's College, Nottingham.—“Characterized by some specialities of rare excellence. It will become a general favourite.”

From the Lecturer on the Theory and Practice of Teaching, Home and Colonial School Society's Training College.—“Contains several features which are very decided improvements. . . . The explanations and definitions are clear and simple: the classifications accurate and uniform.”

From the English Master, Exeter Training College.—“Very carefully arranged, and likely to prove generally useful. I shall be happy to recommend it as opportunities occur.”

From the Rector, High School, Upton-on-Severn.—“It is a work I highly approve, and I shall be only too happy to introduce it here.”

From the Rector of the Academy, Elgin.—“It will be used in the Academy next session.”

38 COCKBURN STREET, EDINBURGH.

THOMAS LAURIE, EDUCATIONAL PUBLISHER,

SPELLING AND DICTATION CLASS-BOOK: With Etymological Exercises. By an INSPECTOR OF SCHOOLS. Fcap. 8vo, Cloth Boards, price 1s. 6d.

The Compiler has aimed above all at judicious *omission* in constructing this Class-book. He has had in view the collecting together, in a classified form, of all the more difficult words in *common use*. Words difficult but rarely met with by the ordinary reader are better learned as they occur in the course of reading, and after the pupil has obtained an accurate knowledge of the great mass of words that occur in daily conversation, in newspapers, and in current literature.

It is presumed that the pupil into whose hands this book is put has already been accustomed to spell from his daily lessons for some years, and also to write simple sentences from dictation. He will find here a revival of the knowledge acquired, and a test of it.

The pupil is understood to learn the columns of words by heart as a home-task, and to copy on his slate, either at home or during school hours, the dictation exercises; writing them afterwards from the dictation of the master. Writing to dictation will never be thoroughly acquired unless the pupils prepare dictation lessons at home, just as they prepare their grammar or geography.

The spelling *rules* have been reduced to three.

The dictation exercises in this book have been so constructed as to convey knowledge as well as to teach spelling.

Masters will find that a dictation book of this kind will afford much better material for the daily *writing* lessons than the wearisome and unmeaning repetition of words commonly found in copy-books. As soon as a scholar can write small-text fairly, his copy should, frequently at least, if not always, be a portion of his dictation book. In this way he will not only gain a more sure and rapid mastery over the art of writing, but he will learn other things at the same time.

It is scarcely necessary to apologise for the etymological portion of the volume, as a knowledge of prefixes and affixes has a close connexion with accurate and intelligent spelling. The Compiler has, except in this one respect, carefully avoided the almost universal error of confounding a spelling-book proper with either a reading-book, on the one hand, or a bad dictionary of signification, on the other. The Dictation Exercises are so selected and constructed as to afford the means of giving lessons in the writing of *précis* or abstracts.

CONTENTS.

FIRST PART.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Section I.—Difficult Monosyllables, and Exercises on them. | Section V.—Words not sounded alike, but apt to be confounded in spelling, with Exercises on them. Exercises on Possessive Case. Cautions. |
| Section II.—Spelling Rules, and Exercises on them. | Section VI.—Alphabetical List of Difficult Polysyllables. |
| Section III.—Difficult Dissyllables, and Exercises on them. | Section VII.—Etymology — Prefixes — Affixes — Roots — Compound Roots, with numerous Exercises. |
| Section IV.—Words sounded alike, but spelled differently, and Exercises on them. | |

SECOND PART.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Miscellaneous Dictation Exercises. | Words mis-spelt by Candidates for the Civil Service. |
| Extracts from Newspapers. | Latin and French Phrases in common use. |
| Forms of Letters. | |

From W. F. COLLIER, Esq., LL.D., Edinburgh Academy.

"It is an admirable book. I know of none in which the difficulties of English spelling are presented to the learner with so much point and plainness, and in such a workable shape for class instruction."

From R. DUNNING, Esq., Professor of the Art of Teaching, Home and Colonial Society's Training College, London.

"I have no hesitation in saying that it is the most complete book of the kind we possess. I shall have great pleasure in submitting it to the students."

38 COCKBURN STREET, EDINBURGH.

THOMAS LAURIE, EDUCATIONAL PUBLISHER,

SCHOOL GRAMMARS BY THE REV. J. CURRIE,

AUTHOR OF "COMMON SCHOOL EDUCATION," ETC.

RUDIMENTARY ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

64 pages, cloth, price 6d.

THE PRACTICAL SCHOOL GRAMMAR;

INCLUDING

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES:

WITH

AN APPENDIX OF EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

128 pages, cloth boards, price 1s. 6d.

In the Rudimentary Grammar the nature of the Parts of Speech are first explained, then their Subdivisions, then their Inflections; the Rules of Syntax are given in connexion with those Inflections by which they are suggested, and to which they immediately apply; and the method of instruction followed is that of Illustration, Definition, and Exercises. In short, it is arranged for analytic teaching, the natural method for the instruction of younger children. In the Second Book of Grammar, which is a sequel to the first, a different order is followed, in consistency with the greater advancement of the pupils. Each Part of Speech is exhibited with the whole body of its Subdivisions and Inflections in what seems the necessary degree of detail; the Syntax is treated systematically, and as a separate part of the subject; and the method of instruction adopted is that of Definition, Illustration, and Exercises. In short, this Second Book of Grammar is arranged for Synthetic teaching, the natural method for the instruction of more advanced pupils. At the same time, it may be observed that the logical order of exposition is not necessarily to be followed rigidly and exhaustively as the best order for school purposes; on the contrary, it would seem, *e.g.*, that the teaching of the three parts of the Syntax may with most advantage be carried on simultaneously.

The ability to write correct English being the immediate object of the grammar taught in the common school, the written exercises throughout this manual have been made numerous and varied; and an Appendix has been added, containing a systematically-arranged set of elementary exercises in composition.

"I consider it a great success."—Rev. J. LATHAM, *Principal of the Derby Diocesan Training College.*

"... It does not bewilder the pupil with endless divisions, and yet enters with sufficient fulness into everything necessary to give him a clear and intelligent insight into the structure of the language."—*Principal of Elvet Academy, Durham.*

"It is one of the best grammars I have seen, and I recommend it where I can."
—*Head Master, St Catherine's Schools, Manchester.*

38 COCKBURN STREET, EDINBURGH.

7

